

PE 1111

.B552

Copy 1



c. 7466.B1

FIRST LESSONS

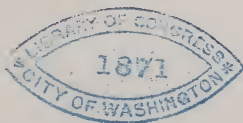
IN

ENGLISH PROSE COMPOSITION.

BY

John Mitchell
J. M. BONNELL, D. D.

PRESIDENT OF WESLEYAN FEMALE COLLEGE, MACON, GA.



LOUISVILLE, KY.:

JOHN P. MORTON AND COMPANY.

1871.

PE III
.3552

Entered according to Act of Congress in the year 1871,

By JOHN P. MORTON AND COMPANY,

In the Office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington.

ELECTROTYPED BY
ROBERT ROWELL,
LOUISVILLE, KY.

PREFACE.

THE exclusive aim of this little book is practical usefulness. It does not profess to be a complete and exhaustive text-book on the art of composition. It proposes to embody only the first lessons in that art, in their most available order, and interspersed with exercises in original composing and letter-writing. It is compiled expressly for use in grammar schools and the preparatory departments of schools of higher grade. Accuracy is, of course, aimed at every-where; but beyond that, all graces of style are sacrificed to plainness, easiness to be understood. It is hoped that teachers, on trial, will find it suitable for younger classes.

J. M. B.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	PAGE.
LESSON. PRELIMINARY LESSON,	7
I.—The Limits of Sentences,	10
II.—Original Composition with guiding Questions,	11
III.—The Full Stops,	13

THE USE OF CAPITALS.

IV.—The Indicating of Proper Nouns,	17
V.—The Indicating of Incorporated Sentences,	19
VI.—The Rules for Capitals,	22
Original Composition, as before,	23
VII.—Quotation Marking,	23

DERIVATIVE ORTHOGRAPHY.

VIII.—Derivation,	26
IX.—The Inflectional Suffices,	27
X.—Original Composition, as before,	29
XI.—The Inflection <i>S</i> changed to <i>ES</i> ,	29
XII.—The Elision of Final Silent <i>E</i> ,	32
XIII.—The Doubling of Final Consonants,	35
XIV.—Inflection of Words ending in <i>Y</i> ,	38
XV.—Original Composition, as before,	41
XVI.—Synonyms,	42

PROPRIETIES OF STYLE.

XVII.—Diction,	44
XVIII.—XX.—Propriety of Diction,	46-52
XXI.—Original Composition, as before,	52

LESSON.	PAGE.
XXII.—XXIV.—Propriety of Diction, continued, . . .	53-58
XXV.—XXVI.—Improprieties in Use of Prepositions, . . .	58-65
XXVII.—Original Composition, as before, . . .	66
XXVIII.—XXX.—Confounding of Paronyms, . . .	66-74
XXXI.—Original Composition, as before, . . .	74
XXXII.—XXXIII.—Confounding of Paronyms, . . .	75-80
XXXIV.—Questions for Review, No. I., . . .	80
XXXV.—Purity of Diction.—Provincialisms, . . .	82
XXXVI.—The Use of Foreign Expressions, . . .	85
XXXVII.—Obsolete Words, . . .	90
XXXVIII.—Unauthorized Words, . . .	93
XXXIX.—Ill-formed Words, . . .	95
XL.—The Proprieties of Letter-writing, . . .	99
XLI.—Chastity of Diction, . . .	101
XLII.—Precision, . . .	106
XLIII.—Euphony of Diction, . . .	109
XLIV.—Narration and Description, . . .	111

PUNCTUATION.

XLV.—Subject-pointing, . . .	113
XLVI.—Compound Terms, . . .	117
XLVII.—Transpositions, . . .	121
XLVIII.—Parentheticals and Interpositions, . . .	123
XLIX.—Independents and Contextuals, . . .	127
L.—Enumerations, . . .	129
LI.—Complex Sentences, . . .	131
LII.—Compound Sentences, . . .	137
LIII.—Varieties of Compound Sentences, . . .	140
LIV.—The Use of the Dash, . . .	145
LV.—Quotation Marks, . . .	149
LVI.—The Style of Letters, . . .	152
LVII.—Questions for Review, No. II., . . .	153
DIRECTIONS TO THE TEACHER, . . .	156
APPENDIX.—TABLE OF SYNONYMS, . . .	159

FIRST LESSONS

IN

ENGLISH PROSE COMPOSITION.

PRELIMINARY LESSON,

WITH EXERCISES INDEFINITELY CONTINUED.

PUPIL. What is the first thing to be done in learning to write a composition?

TEACHER. You must first learn to copy off in writing any continuous discourse.

PUPIL. Do you mean that I should copy off a *sermon*?

TEACHER. A sermon is one kind of discourse; but the word *discourse* is applied to many other forms of composition. When a person speaks or writes several sentences one after another, on any subject, he makes a discourse.

PUPIL. Then, my last letter to Father, about going home at Christmas, was a discourse; was it not? and that beautiful piece that I recited yesterday from my reading-book is a discourse; am I not right?

TEACHER. Yes; and every piece in your reading-book is a discourse, or a part of a discourse.

PUPIL. Is this conversation that we are now carrying on a discourse?

TEACHER. Yes, but it is not continuous; it is broken or interrupted, as all dialogue must be. You would better learn to write *continuous* discourse.

PUPIL. Well, a letter is continuous discourse; is it not?

TEACHER. Yes; but before you attempt to write a letter of your own, you would do well to learn by practice to copy correctly printed discourse in script.

PUPIL. What is *script*?

TEACHER. Script letters are the kind of letters we make when we write with a pen or pencil. You see they have a different shape from printed letters.

PUPIL. Well, must I just take my reading-book, and copy out the pieces?

TEACHER. That is just what is to be done. But you would better let your teacher select for you, so that you may have the easiest ones first.

You must copy not only the words, but all the punctuation marks, the commas, semicolons, colons, periods, exclamation and interrogation points, dashes, and quotation marks. The capitals must come just where they come in the book.

PUPIL. Must I make the lines of the same length that they have in the printed text?

TEACHER. That is almost impossible. You must make the length of your script lines to suit the width of the paper you write on; and when you come to the right-hand edge, you must turn back and begin a new line, regardless of how the lines are divided in the book.

PUPIL. But suppose I have written almost to the edge of the paper, and the next word is too long to go in the space that is left, what shall I do?

TEACHER. You may write a part of the word in that space, and write the rest of the word at the beginning

of the next line. But you must be careful to divide the word between the syllables, and never cut a syllable in two.

The sign that it is only a part of a word that is put at the end of a line, and not the whole word, is a hyphen placed after the first part, at the very end of the line.

PUPIL. What is a *hyphen*?

TEACHER. A hyphen is a short straight mark, such as you find between the parts of compound words.

Here you see it between the two parts of the words

pen-holder, doll-baby, dog-ears.

PUPIL. Why, I call that a dash.

TEACHER. But it is not a dash. A *dash* is much longer, and is never used to separate the parts of compound words, or words broken to fit the length of the line; you will learn the use of the dash after a while. But for the present, remember that the proper name for the short mark that indicates a broken or disparted word is—*hyphen*; and that a hyphen is always to be placed where the want of space requires you to write one or more of the syllables of a word in the next line.

You may now copy a piece from your reading-book.

Let the teacher select the piece to be copied, and repeat the exercise again and again, if necessary, until the pupil becomes familiar with the mechanical execution of writing an ordinary piece of composition, using capitals and punctuation marks, not from any knowledge as yet of the rules for their insertion, but blindly following the guidance of the printed page. He must become adept in this, before he advances to any other exercise.

LESSON I.

THE LIMIT-MARKS OF SENTENCES.

TEACHER. How can you tell the beginning of a sentence in continuous discourse?

PUPIL. The first word of each sentence begins with a capital letter.

TEACHER. Do all the capitals in a discourse indicate the beginning of sentences?

PUPIL. Of course not; some are the signs of proper names.

TEACHER. How can you tell the capitals which mark the beginning of sentences from those which indicate proper names?

PUPIL. Very easily. The beginning of the first sentence of a discourse can not be mistaken. And the first word of each of the other sentences is known by its coming right after a period.

TEACHER. What is the period used for?

PUPIL. The period shows the end of a sentence.

TEACHER. Where must you place the period?

PUPIL. Exactly on a line with the lower parts of all the letters except *g*, *j*, *y*, *p*, *q*, *f*, and *z*,—that is, the line on which the written words seem to stand.

EXERCISE.

Let the pupil write off the following discourse, dividing it into sentences properly indicated.

well, I have had a party I can hardly believe it I am sure it was more than I expected; but my sweet mother proposed it herself she thought it proper that I should pay this attention to my friends; several of whom had invited me, and that it would please my grandfather, who loves the young she said the entertainment must be simple, and that the party must break up at nine o'clock of course we had an early supper, and our old colored servant was delighted

at the thought of serving it around how kind and busy was my dear mother to see that the biscuits, cake, and sliced meats should be nice and in the best order! all the scholars of our school were invited, and scarcely any failed to come they looked exceedingly pretty and neat, dressed in their very best excellent manners, too, most of them had at this I was surprised, having seen some behave very differently at school it pleased me much that each one, after entering the room, went up and bowed or courtesied to my good grandfather and he looked beautiful, seated in his arm-chair, with his hair, which is not very white for his years, brushed so smooth and shining as he took some of them by the hand he said that he liked to see young people happy together, and that he did not know why they should not like to see him too this brought out a general exclamation that they were glad to see him too and then some of them gathered around him, while he told them stories of the Revolution and of General Washington but they soon got to playing, and engaged in a variety of games we played Comparisons and History Characters and "What's my thought like?" then we took to telling riddles and conundrums I never was very good at guessing riddles, but some of the girls were as quick as light so swiftly fled the evening hours that we were amazed when the church-clock began to strike nine then all took a respectful leave of mother and grandfather, and told me how much fun they had had I never felt that I loved my school-mates so much before I was so happy that the tears came into my eyes, and I had to hurry off to bed to keep the family from seeing me cry for joy.*

LESSON II.

TEACHER. I will tell you how I once helped a little girl to make a composition. I wrote out the following questions to guide her.

1. Did you ever have a dog?
2. What kind of a dog was he?
3. What was his color?
4. What was his name?
5. Why was he so named?

* Altered from Mrs. Sigourney.

6. Was he playful?
7. Was he an intelligent dog?
8. How did he usually employ himself?
9. Did he ever go away from home?
10. What became of him?

I told her that she must write the answers to these questions so as to form "continuous discourse," and so connect the answers together that no person, on reading what she had written, without seeing the questions, would suspect that any such help or guide had been given her.

After a while, she brought me what she had written, which contained some mistakes. When I had corrected all the errors, the composition read as follows:

MY DOG.

I once had a dog. He was a very little dog when I got him, but grew as he advanced in age. My brother brought him to me from Lexington. He was nearly all black, with a white stripe down his nose, and with brown tips to his paws. His name was Rip Van Winkle. He was named after that Rip Van Winkle who slept twenty years. I named him so because he slept so much. He was very playful and intelligent, as well as very active. He usually passed his time carrying people's shoes away. When you awoke in the morning you were sure to miss your shoes, and after a while you would find one on the staircase or in some other place in the house, and the other in the yard. He frequently went to make visits to his neighbors and friends, even after I had forbidden him to do so. He was punished for this, because disobedience is always punished. One day he started to market without my permission, and stopped to see some of his friends. I suppose they enticed him off, for he has never been heard of since.

Now, I want you to take the following questions and write out, by their guidance, a composition on your cat,—if you have a cat; if not, you may imagine yourself to be some other little boy or girl, that has such a pet, and write out the composition accordingly.

MY CAT.

1. Have you a cat or a kitten?
2. What is its color?
3. Have you given it a name?
4. Can you give any reason for its being called by that name?
5. Is it playful? How does it show its playfulness?
6. Is it intelligent? How has it ever shown its intelligence?
7. Can you tell any of its habits or ways?
8. Did you ever see it catch a mouse?
9. How was it done?
10. What did the cat or kitten do, after it had caught the mouse?
11. What else can you tell about your kitten, or cat?

NOTE TO THE TEACHER.—After the pupil has written such a composition as he is able to produce with the foregoing help, the teacher should go carefully over it with him, pointing out every error in it, so that he may correct them all in a second draft. Of many of the errors he is yet too immature to know the reason : but whether he does or does not, they should all be corrected, and the second draft should be as nearly perfect as the pupil can make it, with all the knowledge of the teacher to guide him. And if rewriting it once will not secure this, let it be written over and again, until it is as presentable as the chirographic skill of the pupil can make it.

LESSON III.

THE FULL STOPS.

TEACHER. You have now written several pieces of continuous discourse; can you tell how the different sentences are distinguished, one from another?

PUPIL. I find that each sentence is distinguished from the rest of the discourse, by having a capital letter at the beginning, and a full stop at the end of it.

TEACHER. Which are the full stops?

PUPIL. The period, _____ made thus .

The interrogation point, “ “ ?

The exclamation point, “ “ !

TEACHER. Which one of them do you find most frequently used at the end of sentences?

PUPIL. I find the period to be used at the end of sentences far more frequently than the other points.

TEACHER. Have you observed any difference between prose and poetry, as to the use of capitals?

PUPIL. Yes; in poetry every line begins with a capital, whether it is the beginning of a sentence or not.

TEACHER. Suppose a sentence ends in the course of a line, how is it indicated?

PUPIL. Just as in prose; the period comes after the last word of the sentence, and the next sentence begins with a capital, although it comes in the middle of the line.

TEACHER. When is it that the interrogation point comes at the end of a sentence?

PUPIL. When the sentence is a question.

TEACHER. Are you sure that you make the interrogation point correctly? Do you make it bend first to the right and then to the left, or *vice-versa*?

PUPIL. I make it like the letter s, and place a dot under it.

TEACHER. That is not right. Observe carefully the form again, and give it the right turn.

PUPIL. I see now. But when is the exclamation point to be used?

TEACHER. When the sentence is an exclamation.

PUPIL. How am I to know when the sentence is an exclamation?

TEACHER. When it begins with the word *how* or *what*, and yet does not seem to inquire for any thing, or expect an answer, but only to express surprise or admiration, then it is an exclamation, and the exclamation point should come after it. Look at these examples.

How beautiful the snow is!

How swiftly that bird flies!

What fat cows that farmer has!

What generous deeds adorned his life on earth!

When I say—"How swiftly does that bird fly?"—I seem to want to know its rate of flying: but when I say—"How swiftly that bird flies!"—I am simply expressing my admiration of its swiftness. Do you understand the difference?

PUPIL. Yes; but do all exclamations begin with the word *how* or *what*?

TEACHER. By no means. Some other expressions that would naturally be uttered in a loud and rapid manner are exclamations, and should have the corresponding mark after it. Thus, after the following sentences the exclamation point is due.

"The house is on fire! Bring some water! Quick!"

"He could scarcely believe his eyes. There they lay—six large gold pieces!"

"John, would you tell me a lie? Shame!"

"And so he has hid my spectacles! The rogue! But I'll pay him for it."

Now transcribe the following piece, and insert all the capitals, periods, interrogation and exclamation points required by the foregoing rules.

EVIL OVERCOME WITH GOOD.

I once had a neighbor who, though a kind man, came to me one day, and said,

"Squire White, I wish you to come, and get your geese away from my pigs"

"why" asked I: "what are my geese doing to your pigs"

"they pick my pigs' ears," he warmly replied, "when they are eating, and drive them away from their food; and I will not permit it"

"what can I do" inquired I

"you must yoke them," replied he

"well, I have not the time to do that just now," I rejoined: "I think they must get along as best they can for a day or two by the day after to-morrow I shall be through the press of my business, and

will then attend to this matter, and see that your pigs are relieved of their tormentors "

"if you do not take care of your geese, I will," said he in anger

"I can not take care of them now, but I will pay you for all damage done by them "

so off he went, and presently I heard a squalling among the geese I soon learned that three of them were missing my children afterward found them in the bushes, dead and much mangled

"now," said I, "keep still, and let me punish him " in a few days his pigs broke into my corn I saw them, but let them remain a long time at last I drove them out, and picked up the corn which they had torn down, and fed them with it in the road by this time he came in great haste after them

"have you seen any thing of my pigs " asked he

"yes, sir; you will find them yonder, eating some corn which they tore down in my field "

"in your field "

"yes, sir," answered I, "pigs love corn, you know; they were made to eat "

"how much mischief have they done "

"oh, not much," I said

well, off he went to look; and he estimated the damage to be equal to a bushel and a half of corn

"oh, no; it can not be so much "

"yes," he replied; "and I will pay you every cent of damage "

"no, you shall pay me nothing; my geese have been a great trouble to you "

at this he blushed and went home

after some days, I met him on the road, and fell into conversation with him, in the most friendly manner but when I started on, he seemed loath to move, and I paused for a moment both of us were silent at last he said, "I have something weighing on my mind"—"well, what is it"—"those geese I killed three of your geese, and shall never rest until you know how I feel about it I am sorry" and the tears came into his eyes "oh, well," said I, never mind; I suppose my geese were very provoking"

I never took any thing of him for it; but whenever my cattle broke into his field after this, he seemed glad, because he could show how patient he could be

LESSON IV.

THE INDICATING OF PROPER NOUNS.

TEACHER. Do you know what kinds of words are to be written with the first letter a capital?

PUPIL. Yes; proper nouns are to be written in that way.

TEACHER. That is true; but can you tell me why a capital is used with the word pyramids, in the sentence—"We went to Egypt expressly to see the Pyramids."

PUPIL. I can not tell; for here I find the same word without a capital: "The top shelf of the pantry was crowded with pyramids of loaf-sugar."

TEACHER. The reason is that in the former sentence the word is used as the distinguishing name for certain objects that are famous enough to be known as "the Pyramids." That is, the word is used *as a proper noun*. But in the latter sentence, it is used as a common noun. Whenever a common noun is used as a proper noun, it should begin with a capital.

PUPIL. Suppose the proper name of an object consists of several words, as the Gulf of Mexico, should all the words begin with capitals?

TEACHER. Only the nouns and adjectives which it contains. The same rule applies to all titles given to persons or books. For instance,

The Duke of Argyle;
The President of the United States;
The History of British India;
Pike's Guide to Young Disciples.

PUPIL. Why is the F a capital in the word French?

TEACHER. Because that word is derived from a proper noun. All adjectives derived from proper nouns, or used as proper nouns, are to be begun with capitals. Hence,

American, Chinese, and Christian are always written with capital initials.

PUPIL. What are initials?

TEACHER. The first letter of a word is called the initial letter. All the foregoing rules, are rules for capital initials.

Now transcribe the following extract, placing the capitals and periods where they should occur.

NOAH WEBSTER.

noah webster was born in west hartford, connecticut, october 16th, 1758 he was prepared by the clergyman of the town, rev. nathan perkins, for yale college, which he entered in 1774 on his return from college, after his graduation, his father presented him with an eight-dollar bill of the continental currency, with about four dollars in specie, with the information that he must take care of himself it was as much as many a father, in those days of poverty and struggle, could do for his son school-keeping was, as usual, the first resource of the young a. b. in 1782 we find him teaching a classical school at goshen, in orange county, new york here he entered upon the preparation of the school-books which have given him an american reputation in the following years he published consecutively the first, second, and third parts of a grammatical institute of the english language, the whole comprising the famous spelling-book, a grammar, and a reader the spelling-book, revised at different times by the author, reached during his life-time a sale of millions, and by a copy-right income of less than one cent per copy, supported him and his family for twenty years, while he was engaged in preparing his american dictionary.

noah webster had tact in discerning the wants of the country in his day, and providing for them in this spelling-book he simplified knowledge, and made it easy of acquisition, arranging the words in ready forms to catch the eye and linger in the memory, while he added brief lessons in definitions, and geographical and other terms, intermingling those homely and hearty lessons of fables and proverbs which found their way to the conscience, perhaps despite of the wretched wood-cuts that purported to illustrate them there have been few moral lessons productive of the same effect in the country as the famous old fable of the boy that stole apples who does not recollect how he sits, in the wood-cut, alarmingly exposed, astride

of a branch almost naked of foliage, while the farmer in small-clothes, one arm akimbo, the other drawn well back, takes aim at the "sauce-box" do you not think that many a fellow, as he passed through the world, has had his sense of duty strengthened by that fable then there is that forlorn country maid and her milk-pail, teaching the double lesson of the vanity of human expectations, and the folly of unnecessary grief how many a housekeeper has wiped her eyes and turned from past disaster to present duty, with the words "there's no use grieving over spilled milk" vividly recalled to her mind in connection with that rude old picture that story, too, of the truant, and the descriptions of a good boy and of a bad boy, not forgetting the wonderful table of proverbs, counsels, and maxims, all in words of one syllable, taxing the wisdom of nations, and the strong old saxon powers of the english language—what sounder lessons, more calculated to make honest, thrifty, energetic men, could have been set before the plastic minds of american youth the third part of the institutes was made up of lessons in reading and speaking, dialogues, and poetry there was the affecting story of la roche, rules of behavior from chesterfield and of making money from franklin, dialogues from otway and shakespeare, stories from swift's tale of a tub, and from american history in abundance, extracts from the narratives of greene and ramsey, from the orations of warren and hancock, and from the poetry of dwight, freneau, and barlow a later edition added franklin's memorable piece called the whistle, jefferson's logan, and humphrey's adventures of general putnam these were the "household words" in school-houses over hill and valley, and in the homes of our forefathers in the youth of the nation

LESSON V.

THE INDICATING OF INCORPORATED SENTENCES.

PUPIL. I have learned that the first word of every separate and complete sentence should begin with a capital. But I find some sentences that are not separate and distinct, but involved with other sentences; and I am perplexed with them, not knowing whether to make them begin with a capital or not.

TEACHER. It very often occurs that one sentence forms a part of another; and there are two ways in which this may be done.

One way is to bring in the whole sentence without changing any of its words, introducing it by some words that definitely refer to it. For example;—It was Shakespeare that wrote the famous sentence, “Who steals my purse, steals trash.” In this sentence the words—“who steals my purse, steals trash”—form a complete sentence of themselves: and they are expressly referred to in the preceding words, “the famous sentence.” In this way it is said to be *formally* introduced.

PUPIL. Then, here is another example of a sentence formally introduced: “Remember the old maxim, ‘Honesty is the best policy.’”

TEACHER. Yes; and here is another: “And Jesus answered and said unto them, ‘Go and show John these things which ye do see and hear.’” For the preceding words “said unto them” constitute a formal introduction to what follows.

PUPIL. Now, what is the rule about the use of capitals in such places?

TEACHER. Whenever a complete sentence is thus formally introduced in another sentence it should begin with a capital. If it is not formally introduced, but is blended with the sentence that comprehends it by any conjunction, then it should not be distinguished by a capital. For instance, we do not use a capital at the beginning of the sentence, “There is a God,” when we say, “The Atheists deny that there is a God.”

The sentence “Who cut this tree?” begins with a capital. And if we incorporate it thus, “His father exclaimed ‘Who cut this tree?’”—it still begins with a capital. But if we say—“I do not know who cut this tree,” we do not use a capital with the word *who*.

Look, now, at the following examples, and tell why, in each case, the capital is, or is not, used.

Physician, heal thyself.

Ye will surely say unto me this proverb: "Physician, heal thyself."

Whom the Lord loveth, he chasteneth. In all your sorrows, remember that "whom the Lord loveth, he chasteneth."

It was Bryant that wrote the splendid verse beginning with—"Truth, crushed to earth, shall rise again."

EXERCISE.

Let the pupil transcribe this piece, inserting capitals and periods where required.

it is not good for human nature to have the road of life made too easy an eminent judge, when asked what contributed most to success at the bar, replied, "some succeed by great talents, some by high connections, some by miracle; but the majority, by commencing without a shilling" it may, indeed, be questioned whether a heavier curse could be put on a man than the complete gratification of all his wishes, without effort on his part, leaving nothing for his hopes, desires, or struggles a certain marquis asking sir horace vere what his brother died of, sir horace replied, "he died, sir, of having nothing to do" "ah!" said the marquis, "that is enough to kill any general of us all"

a french statesman, being asked how he contrived to accomplish so much work, and at the same time attend to his social duties, replied, "I do it simply by never postponing till to-morrow what should be done to-day" it was said of an unsuccessful public man, that he used to reverse this process, his maxim being never to transact to-day what could be postponed till to-morrow one of the minor uses of steady employment is that it keeps one out of mischief an old captain, when there was nothing else to do, would issue the order—"scour the anchor" an economical use of time is the true mode of securing leisure it enables us to get through business, and carry it forward, instead of being driven by it nelson once said, "I owe all my success in life to having been always a quarter of an hour before my time" we naturally come to the conclusion that the person who is careless about time, is careless about every thing else when washington's secretary excused himself for the lateness of his attendance two days in succession, and laid the blame upon his watch, washington

quietly replied, "then you must get another watch, or I must get another secretary" franklin once said to a servant who was always late, but always ready with an excuse, "the man that is good at an excuse is, I have generally found, good for nothing else" the unpunctual man is a general disturber of others' peace and serenity he is systematically late; regular only in his irregularity he always arrives at his appointment after the hour; gets to the railway station after the train has started; and posts his letter after the mail has closed such men are generally found to be too late for success, and become grumblers and railers against fortune.

LESSON VI.

RULES FOR CAPITALS.

TEACHER. Can you now repeat all the rules for the use of capitals?

PUPIL. I have learned that

1. The first word of every sentence should begin with a capital;
2. The first word of every line of poetry should begin with a capital;
3. The first word of every sentence formally introduced in another sentence should begin with a capital;
4. Every proper noun should begin with a capital;
5. The first letter of every word used as a proper noun should be a capital;
6. Every adjective and noun in a title or in a phrase used as a proper noun should begin with a capital;
7. Every adjective derived from a proper noun should begin with a capital.

TEACHER. There are two other rules; you may learn them with the others.

8. The pronoun I and the interjection O are always capitals.
9. In didactic discourse, whenever the subject under discussion, or its leading divisions are mentioned, they should begin with capitals.

PUPIL. What is *didactic* discourse?

TEACHER. It is what is said or written for the purpose of teaching, or to set forth the principles of any art or science. You will hardly be required to write didactic discourse for some time yet. You may now write out a composition with the guidance of the following questions.

MICE.

1. What kind of creatures are mice?
2. What are they covered with?
3. Its color and quality?
4. Is there any thing peculiar about their eyes?
5. How would you describe their movements? Do they usually walk about as hogs and cows do? Can you think of a reason for this?
6. Where do mice live?
7. On what do they live?
8. What do they seem to like best?
9. What animal seems to be the natural enemy of the mouse?
10. How does the cat catch mice?
11. Are people fond of having mice about the house?
12. What mischief do they do?
13. How do people seek to destroy them?
14. Describe the different kinds of traps that are set for mice.
15. Can a mouse hurt you?
16. Do they ever bite one who does not touch them?
17. Is it not very silly to be afraid of a mouse?

LESSON VII.

QUOTATION-MARKING.

PUPIL. In copying discourse from the book, I find marks like commas occurring every now and then, in pairs, sometimes upside down, sometimes not; what do they mean?

TEACHER. They are *quotation-marks*. Do you know what it is to *quote*?

PUPIL. The dictionary says it means "to cite the words of another." But this makes me no wiser, for I do not know what to *cite* is.

TEACHER. Well, to *quote* is to bring in the words of another into a discourse. A quotation is the passage thus brought in or repeated. When one person, in his discourse, tells or repeats what another person has said or written, he is said to quote from that other person; and the quotation is marked with these points that look like double commas. But they are not the same as commas; can you point out the difference?

PUPIL. They range along with the upper part of the ordinary letters of a line and not with the lower part, as the commas do. They generally come in pairs, but not always, and some are upside down. Why all these differences?

TEACHER. A simple quotation is marked by a pair of *inverted* commas at the beginning and a pair of commas not inverted at the end. Thus, "to quote is to cite the words of another." But when one quotation contains another, the contained quotation is marked with single commas, instead of double ones. For example:

Then the minister gravely said, "True, my friend, you have many resources of pleasure; 'yet lackest thou one thing'; you have not gained the favor of your Maker, without which you are never safe from unutterable disaster and wretchedness."

PUPIL. Are the words of others always to be marked with quotation-marks when introduced into the discourse of another?

TEACHER. Always, unless they are changed in some respect to suit the occasion for which they are quoted. If the words are brought in just as they were first uttered or written, they are truly quotations, and must always be marked accordingly.

EXERCISE.

To be transcribed and punctuated.

It is not safe, my son, to sit on the damp ground, said henry's mother to him one pleasant day in june why is it not safe asked henry the weather is warm and mild, and the turf makes a soft seat persons are liable to take severe colds from lying or sleeping on the ground, unless they are used to it; and you have lived so much within doors, all the winter and spring, that you can not safely expose yourself to the damp i know boys who think nothing of sitting on the ground, said henry you are too anxious, mother and henry ran off to play with his hoop he had not played half an hour, when, feeling warm and tired, he strolled into the garden he came to a bank where roses and lilies were in bloom, and where the grass seemed thick and green what a nice place for a nap, thought henry; so he dropped his hoop and stick, and neglectful of his mother's caution, lay down at full length on the ground, and soon fell asleep when he awoke, his limbs felt stiff and chilly the wind, too, had changed from the south to the east, and it seemed to produce a peculiar feeling on henry, the very opposite of sprightliness and a desire for activity he went home, and found the family at tea that night, henry was taken with a high fever his sleep on the grass had given him a severe cold in a few days he was so ill that the doctor himself was very much alarmed, and called in two other physicians to consult about his case at last, however, the disease began to yield to the skill and attention of the doctor, seconded and carried into effect by his anxious mother's nursing one day the doctor, sitting with him, said: it is always dangerous to lie on the grass after being over-heated by bodily exercise in such a state, the proper course is not to lie or sit down, but to continue exercising gently until the skin gradually becomes as cool as usual neither should you, when over-heated, expose the body to the wind or to a draught of air in the house, nor take off your coat, nor fan yourself it is no doubt more agreeable to do so, but it is very dangerous the safest plan is to walk gently about until the body is cool but, said henry, i have heard the boys who went into the army say that after marching for hours in the rain, they would sometimes halt, and lie down and sleep in the rain, and after a few hours get up and march on again, and never get sick, or even take cold that was because they had become used to it, said the doctor if you will live as much out of doors as they did, take the weather as it comes, and exercise a great

deal, you will not be affected by wet clothes or sudden cooling either but, still, it would require great caution to pass from the one mode of life to the other without getting sick do you not recollect how many of the fresh recruits were taken sick about a month or two after they went into service, and what a large proportion of them died or returned home with their health gone, their constitution permanently or for a long period impaired those who recovered, gradually resumed the rough and exposed life of a soldier some by singular prudence at the beginning, or else by a singular train of fortunate circumstances, passed from the citizen's life, as it is called, to the soldier's life, without being made ill by it any one can do this, if he exercise sufficient care it is possible for us to preserve ourselves from colds and other diseases, if, from childhood, we keep our skin in a healthy condition by frequent bathing and by proper exposure; and if, in all weathers and in every season, we take, with proper precaution, a plenty of bodily exercise in the open air.

DERIVATIVE ORTHOGRAPHY.

LESSON VIII.

DERIVATION.

PUPIL. What is meant by one word's being *derived* from another?

TEACHER. It means that one word is made out of another.

PUPIL. How is that?

TEACHER. By some change in the spelling of the word, or by some addition to it, another word is formed, having some connection with the first word in meaning. This process is called *derivation*, and the word that is thus formed is called a *derivative* word.

PUPIL. What is the word called from which the derivative is formed?

TEACHER. That is called the *primitive* word. If the derivation is made by adding something to the primitive, then the primitive is called the *radical*. If what is added is placed *before* the radical, it is called a *prefix*; if *after* the radical, it is called a *suffix*.

PUPIL. So then in the word *unable*, *un* is the prefix, and *able* is the radical.

TEACHER. Precisely.

PUPIL. And in the word *friendly*, *friend* is the radical, and *ly* is the suffix.

TEACHER. Yes. You may now pick out all the derivative words to be found on any page of your reading-book, and arrange their parts in three columns, one for the prefixes, one for the radicals, and one for the suffixes, in this form :

DERIVATIVES.	PREFIXES.	RADICALS.	SUFFIXES.
Astride	a	stride	
Outward		out	ward
Foreknow	fore	know	
Boundless		bound	less
Plastered		plaster	ed
Unknown	un	known	
Unadorned	un	adorn	ed

LESSON IX.

THE INFLECTIONAL SUFFIXES.

PUPIL. Is it not by derivation that the past tense of regular verbs is formed from the present tense ?

TEACHER. Yes. But this kind of derivation is generally called inflection.

PUPIL. Can you tell me definitely what inflection is ?

TEACHER. Inflection is that kind of derivation by which one grammatical form is made from another by

the adding of a suffix, or making some other change in the spelling.

PUPIL. But it seems to me there are not many kinds of inflection used in English, compared with what are used in Latin.

TEACHER. You are right. The English language has but a few inflections. Can you not count them up for me?

PUPIL. There is the adding of *s*, to form the plural; that is one: then there is the adding an apostrophe and *s*, to form the possessive singular; that is two: and the adding of *ed*, to form the past tense and perfect participle of regular verbs; that is three: and—and—I can not think of any more.

TEACHER. There are four more: *er*, *est*, *eth*, and *ing*.

PUPIL. Oh, yes: *er* to form the comparative, and *est* to form the superlative of short adjectives. But I can not think what *eth* is for.

TEACHER. To make the old or solemn form of the third person singular present of verbs.

PUPIL. Oh, yes! And *ing* forms the imperfect participle of verbs. That is all.

TEACHER. But you have forgotten that some of these have two uses.

S is added to nouns to form their plural; but it is also used to form the third person singular of the present tense of verbs.

The suffix *'s* has another use besides the marking of the possessive singular of nouns. The plural of letters, marks, figures, and sometimes of proper names, is made by an apostrophe and an *s*.

Est is the inflection used to indicate the second person singular of verbs.

Now see if you can write these all out in a list, giving with each suffix the use or uses to which it is applied.

LESSON X.

TEACHER. With the following questions as a guide, write out a composition on

SQUIRRELS.

1. What kind of animals are squirrels?
2. What is their color and size?
3. What other animal does the squirrel resemble?
4. What is the most striking point of difference between that other animal and the squirrel?
5. What do squirrels live on?
6. Where do we find them in the early part of spring?
7. What kind of food do they seem to prefer?
8. What damage do the squirrels do to the farmers?
9. How do the farmers try to prevent this damage?
10. Is it easy to kill a squirrel with a gun? Why?
11. Are squirrels ever caught and tamed?
12. What kind of lodging-places are generally provided for pet squirrels?
13. What is their most common amusement?
14. Are squirrels fond of being shut up in a cage? How do they show their joy on being let out?
15. What animals are naturally the enemies of squirrels?
16. Where do the wild squirrels stay during winter?
17. How do they spend the winter?
18. Did you ever hear of squirrels crossing a river?
19. How do you suppose they do it?

 LESSON XI.
THE INFLECTION *S* CHANGED TO *ES*.

PUPIL. Have we not omitted one of the inflectional suffixes. I find some words inflected by the suffix *es*.

TEACHER. *Es* is only another form of the suffix *s*. There are some words that end with such a sound that

you can not join *s* to them without making another syllable of it. These words take *es* instead of *s*. For instance, *box*: we can not pronounce such a word as *boxs*; we are almost obliged to sound it as *boxes*, to distinguish it from *box*. So with such words as *church*, *wash*, *mass*, etc.

PUPIL. *Box* ends in *x*; *church* in *ch*; *wash* in *sh*; and *mass* in *s*. I understand, then, the rule to be that the suffix *s* takes the form of *es* after all words ending in *x*, *ch*, *sh*, or *s*.

TEACHER. Yes; but you must recollect that *ch* sometimes has the sound of *k*; and when a word ends with that sound, it does not take an *e* before the *s*. Thus the plural of *monarch* is not *monarches*, but *monarchs*.

But such words as these we have mentioned, whose final sound will not join with *s*, are not the only ones that take an *e* before the suffix *s*. Most words ending in *o* require the same form of this suffix.

PUPIL. Then the plural of *negro* is *negroes*; and of *potato* is *potatoes*. Are these all?

TEACHER. No; there are some words ending in *y*, and some in *f*, that do not take the simple *s* where this suffix is required.

Words ending in *y*, if a consonant comes before the *y*, change the *y* into *i*, and then take the suffix *es*. Thus: *lady*, *ladies*; *auxiliary*, *auxiliaries*; *deny*, *denies*; *mortify*, *mortifies*.

PUPIL. But suppose a vowel comes before the *y*.

TEACHER. Then no change is required; the simple suffix *s* is added, as in the case of any ordinary word. Thus: *alley*, *alleys*; *key*, *keys*.

PUPIL. Well, how about words in *f*? I find that *leaf* makes its plural *leaves*, and *self*, *selves*. But *belief* has for its plural *beliefs*, and *grief*, *griefs*.

TEACHER. There is no certain rule to govern these

words. You must learn what is the usage in the case of each word, and conform to it. But always observe this, that whenever an *f* toward the end of a word is changed into *v* before taking the suffix *s*, there always comes an *e* between the *v* and the *s*, and the termination is *ves*.

EXERCISE.

Let the pupil transcribe the following extract, correcting all the errors he finds in it.

RURAL ENGLAND.

There we found ourselfs right in the midst of it and such a country of all countrys the most beautiful green, glistening, gorgeous we stood dumb-stricken by its loveliness, as, from the bleak april and bare boughs we had left at home, broke upon us that english may—sunny, leafy, blooming may—in an english lane; with hedges, hawthorn hedges, all in blossom; homely old farm-houses, quaint stables, haystacks, and grassy-banked ditches there was the old church-spire over the distant trees; the mild sun beaming through the moist air, and all so quiet; not the solemn mystery of the american forest that hushs all expressions of light-heartedness; but the soothing quietness of peace-suggesting sounds; the hum of bees, the browsing of silky-skinned, real, unimported hereford cows, cropping crisp grass in the happy fields. As we walked on we were charmed with the hedges they were true farm-fencing hedges, not mere rows of hawthorn bushes, trim, stiff, amateur-like, but with the verdure broken, tufty, low, and natural they were set on ridges of earth thrown out from ditches beside them, which raise and strengthen them as fences these hawthorn hedges are now covered in patchs, as if after a slight fall of snow, with clusters of white or pink blossoms over its light green leafs here and there are holly bushes, with bunchs of scarlet berryys, mingled with the hawthorn at length a stone spire catchs our eye we approach it, and after one or two turns of the road it is full in view there it is the old ivy-covered, brown-stone, village church, with its somber archs, its pensive yew-trees, and its heaped-up, green old church-yard we knew it at once we had seen it pictured with numberless variations in hundreds of printed or painted landscapes we turn to the right there is the old ale-house, long, low and thatch-roofed the open door invites us and we enter benches of marvelous whiteness from repeated washing, are ranged round the room on one sits a bluff, hearty old fellow, with a long-stemmed pipe and a foaming

pewter mug on the table before him at the same moment another man rushes in from the rain that just now comes down in dashes he pitches into a seat and raps with his whip a young woman enters, neat and trim, with exactly such a white cap, smooth hair, shiny face, bright eyes, and red cheeks as we were looking for the last comer calls out—muggoyail, lass—mug of ale—ay, that's it, I say in my heart the tear gushes from my eye as I beckon for other mugs also, and give out the toast, merrie england forever they soon find out that I am an american, and gather around me with questions the old woman in the back room overhears it, fixes on her spectacles, and comes in to look at us the stout man with the pipe catches at a pretext to prolong his stay, and plies us with questions about rents, tithes, and taxes the muggoyail man wishes he could save enough to take him to such a country in response to our questions we get nothing but grumbling; grumbling at parliament, at the ministry, at the free-trade policy, and worst of all, at the seasons and so we found in this loveliest of all lands, amid the prettiest of all rural scenery, there was this to mar it all—the discontented, evil heart of man.

LESSON XII.

THE ELISION OF FINAL SILENT *E*.

TEACHER. How do you spell the word *coming*?

PUPIL. C-o-m, com, i-n-g, ing, coming.

TEACHER. How do you spell *living*?

PUPIL. L-i-v, liv, i-n-g, ing, living.

TEACHER. From what are *coming* and *living* derived?

PUPIL. They are derived respectively from *come* and *live*.

TEACHER. What is done with the last letter of these two words, when the suffix *ing* is added?

PUPIL. That seems to be dropped. And very properly too, for in these two words, *come* and *live*, the final *e* is silent.

TEACHER. This, then, is the rule respecting such

words, when they take a suffix that begins with a vowel: the final *e*, being silent, is dropped.

PUPIL. The letter *e*, then, of such words as *cured*, *finer*, *vices*, etc., belongs to the suffix, and not to the radical part of the word.

TEACHER. Certainly; and if ever you have to divide such a word at the end of a line, be careful to make the division at the right place. Thus, *com-ing*, *liv-ing*, *cur-ed*, *fin-er*, *vic-es*, etc.

PUPIL. But I do not find the final *e* dropped in the words *graceful*, *graceless*, *whiteness*, *finely*; etc. Why is this?

TEACHER. Because the suffix in each of these words does not begin with a vowel. They are *ful*, *less*, *ness*, and *ly*. Moreover they are not inflectional suffixes.

PUPIL. But why is the *e* retained in *shoeing* and *hoing* and *freeing*?

TEACHER. In these cases the *e* seems to be a part of a diphthong, or else is retained to show that the following *i* is not to be joined in a diphthong with the foregoing vowel. *Shoing*, *hoing*, and *freing* would look like words of one syllable without the *e*.

PUPIL. And why is the *e* retained in *singeing* and *tingeing*?

TEACHER. To preserve the preceding *g* soft, and distinguish these words from *singing* and *tinging*.

EXERCISE.

To be transcribed correctly.

Paul had never risen from his little bed he lay there, listening to the noises in the street, quite tranquilly; not caring much how the time went, but watching it, and watching every thing about him with observeing eyes when the sunbeams struck into his room through the rustleing blinds, and quivered on the opposite wall like golden water, he knew that evening was comeing on, and that the sky was red and

beautiful as the reflection died away, and a gloom went creeping up the wall, he watched it deepen, deepen, deepen into night then he imagined how the long streets were dotted with lamps, and how the peaceful stars were shining overhead his fancy had a strange tendency to wander to the river, which he knew was flowing through the great city: and now he thought how black it was, and how deep it would look, reflecting the hosts of stars, and more than all, how steadily it rolled away to meet the sea as it grew later in the night, and footsteps in the street became so rare that he could hear them coming, count them as they passed, and lose them in the hollow distance, he would lie and watch the many-colored ring about the candle, and wait patiently for day his only trouble was the dark and rapid river he felt forced sometimes to try to stop it, to stem it with his childish hands, or choke its way with sand; and when he saw it coming on resistless, he cried out! but a word from Florence, who was always at his side, restored him to himself; and reclining his poor head upon her breast, he told her of his dream, and smiled when day began to dawn again, he watched for the sun; and when its cheerful light began to sparkle in the room, he pictured to himself—pictured?—he saw—the high church towers rising up into the morning sky, the town reviving, waking, starting into life once more, the river, sparkling now, as it rolled, but rolling fast as ever, and the country bright with dew familiar sounds and cries came by degrees into the street below; the servants in the house were roused and busy; faces looked in at the door, and voices asked his attendants softly how he was Paul always answered for himself, I am better I am a great deal better, thank you tell Papa so by little and little, he got tired of the bustle of the day, the noise of carriages and carts, and people passing and repassing; and would fall asleep, or be troubled with a restless and uneasy sense again—the child could hardly tell whether this were in his sleeping or his waking moments—of that rushing river why will it never stop, he would sometimes ask her it is bearing me away, I think thus the flush of the day, in its heat and light, would gradually decline, and again the golden water would be dancing on the wall

LESSON XIII.

THE DOUBLING OF FINAL CONSONANTS.

TEACHER. How do you write the comparative degree of the adjective *red*?

PUPIL. It is written *redder*; but I do not see why, for the radical, *red*, has only one *d*.

TEACHER. What is the second person singular of the present tense of *get*?

PUPIL. *Gettest*; and here again the *t* is doubled.

TEACHER. What is the present or imperfect participle of the verb *begin*?

PUPIL. *Beginning*; and here again the last letter of the radical is doubled. What is the rule for this doubling?

TEACHER. When a radical word, that has its accent on the last syllable, and that ends in a single consonant preceded by a single vowel, is to be inflected with a suffix that begins with a vowel, then the final consonant of the radical is to be doubled.

PUPIL. What a difficult rule! Pray, can you not explain it, or make it simpler for me?

TEACHER. You will observe there are five conditions:

1. The word must be accented on the last syllable;
2. The last letter must be a consonant;
3. The letter next to the last must be a vowel;
4. The letter third from the end must be a consonant;
5. The suffix proposed to be added must begin with a vowel.

If all these conditions exist, then the last letter is to be doubled; if a single one fails, then the last letter is not to be doubled.

Now can you tell me why the *l* is not doubled in *raveled* and *raveling*?

PUPIL. Because the accent does not come on the last syllable in the word *ravel*. It violates the first condition.

TEACHER. Can you tell me why the *w* is not doubled in *showing*?

PUPIL. Because the radical *show* does not end in a consonant. It violates the second condition.

TEACHER. Can you tell why the *m* is not doubled in *charmed*?

PUPIL. Because the letter before the last in the radical *charm* is not a vowel. The third condition is violated.

TEACHER. Can you tell why the *l* is not doubled in *toiling*?

PUPIL. Because the third letter from the end in the word *toil* is not a consonant. The fourth condition is violated.

TEACHER. Now I will give you some examples in which all the conditions are followed, and the rule holds good.

PUPIL. But first, tell me why you bring in monosyllables under the rule. Are they accented on the last syllable?

TEACHER. Certainly. They have but one syllable, and as every word, at least every inflected word, must have an accent, so the accent must fall on the only syllable.

Here, then, are the examples I promised you, and you will observe how they are divided into syllables.

Beget beget-ting ;	Mad mad-der ;
Compel . . . compel-led ;	Flat flat-test ;
Expel expel-ling ;	Begin . . . begin-ning ;
Forbid . . . forbid-dest ;	Occur . . . occur-ring ;
Unpin . . . unpin-ned :	Prefer . . . prefer-red.

PUPIL. I think I have seen the word *traveled* spelt with two *l*'s, and the word *worshiper* spelt with two *p*'s, although these radicals do not have the accent on the last syllable.

TEACHER. Yes, some writers have practiced this irregularity ; but the best orthographers are setting their faces

against it, and now the practice of the best writers is coming back to the rule. Therefore always write such words thus: *traveling, traveled, traveler, worshiping, worshiped, worshiper, caviling, leveling, equaled, enveloping*, etc.

EXERCISE.

Let the pupil transcribe the following piece, correcting all the errors.

a chinese manuscript says that the art of roastting was accidentally discovered in the following manner the swineherd, ho-ti, haveing gone out into the woods one morning, as his manner was, to collect mast for his hogs, left his cottage in the care of his elddest son, bo-bo, a great lubberly boy, who being fond of playying with fire, as younkers of his age commonly are, let some sparks escape into a bundle of straw, which kindleing quickly, spread the conflagration over every part of their poor mansion, till it was reduceed to ashes together with the cottage, (a very sorry antediluvian makeshift of a buildding you may think it,) what was of much more importance, a fine litter of new-farrowwed pigs, no less than nine in number, perishshed china pigs have been esteemmed a luxury all over the east, from the remoteest periods that we read of bo-bo was in the utmost consternation, as you may think, not so much for the tenement, which his father and he could easily build up again, as for the loss of the pigs while he was thinkking what he should say to his father, and wringging his hands over the smokeing remnants of one of those untimely sufferers, an odor assailed his nostrils, unlike any scent which he had before experieneed what could it proceed from—not from the burnt cottage,—he had smelt that smell before;—indeed this was by no means the first accident of the kind which had occured through the negligence of this unlucky young firebrand much less did it resemble that of any known herb, weed, or flower a premonitory moistenning at the same time overflowwed his nether lip he knew not what to think he next stoopped down to feel the pig, if there were any signs of life in it he burnt his fingers, and to cool them, he applied them in his booby fashion to his mouth some of the crums of the scorched skin had come away with his fingers, and for the first time in his life (in the world's, indeed, for before him no man had known it) he tasted—crackleing! again he felt and fumbleed at the pig it did not burn him so much now; still he lickked his fingers from a sort of habit the truth at length broke into his slow understanding, that it was the pig that smelt so, and the

pig that tasteed so delicious ; and surrenderring himself up to the new-born pleasure, he fell to tearing up whole handfuls of the scorched skin with the flesh next it, and was cramming it down his throat in his beastly fashion, when his sire enterred amid the smokeing rafters, armed with retributory cudgel, and findding how affairs stood, began to rain blows upon the young rogue's shoulders, as thick as hailstones, which bo-bo heeded not any more than if they had been flies the tickleing pleasure which he experienceed in his lower regions had rendered him quite callous to any inconveniences he might feel in those remoteer quarters his father might lay on, but he could not beat him from his pig, till he had fairly made an end of it, when, becomeing a little more sensible of his situation, something like the following dialogue ocured you graceless whelp, what have you got there devourring is it not enough that you have burnned me down three houses with your dog's tricks, (and be hangged to you) but you must be eatting fire, and I know not what—what have you got there, I say—o father, the pig, the pig do come and taste how nice the burnt pig eats—the ears of ho-ti tingleed with horror he curseed his son, and curseed himself that ever he should beget a son that should eat burnt pig bo-bo, whose scent was wonderfully sharpenned since morning, soon rakeed out another pig, and fairly rendding it asunder, thrust the lesser half by main force into the fists of ho-ti, still shoutting out, eat, eat, eat the burnt pig, father ; only taste ; oh, glory—with such like barbarous ejaculations, cramming all the while as if he would choke ho-ti trembleed at every joint while he graspped the abominable thing, waverring whether he should not put his son to death for an unnatural young monster, when, the crackleing scorching his fingers, as it had scorched his son's, and applying the same remedy to them, he in his turn tasteed some of its flavor, which, make what sour mouths he would for a pretense, proved not altogether displeaseing to him in conclusion (for the manuscript here is a little tedious) both father and son sat down to the mess, and never left off till they had fairly dispatched all that remained of the litter.

LESSON XIV.

INFLECTION OF WORDS ENDING IN Y.

PUPIL. I find some difficulty in properly joining the inflectional suffixes to words ending in *y*. I find the per-

fect participle of *pity* to be *pitied*, and of *play* to be *played*. Why is this?

TEACHER. The difference is made by the letter that precedes the final *y*. If that letter is a consonant, then the *y* is changed into *i* before any suffix that begins with *e*. But if the letter before *y* is a vowel, then no change is made. Thus:

Weary wearieth wearied;
 Signify signifieth signified;
 Copy copiest copied;
 Busy busier busiest.

Gay gayer gayest;
 Pray prayeth prayest;
 Survey surveyest surveyed;
 Convoy conveyeth convoyed.

PUPIL. But I find that the verb *pay* does not have *payed* but *paid*.

TEACHER. Yes, there are four verbs, *pay*, *lay*, *stay*, and *say*, that contract their forms *payed*, *layed*, *stayed*, and *sayed* into *paid*, *laid*, *staid*, and *said*.

PUPIL. But how about the suffix *ing* in *lying*? The radical is not spelt with a *y*, but is *lie*.

TEACHER. When the suffix *ing* is to be added to a radical ending in *ie*, this termination *ie* is first changed into *y*. Thus, *die*—*dying*, *tie*—*tying*, *underlie*—*underlying*.

EXERCISE.

Let the pupil transcribe the following extract, correcting all the errors in it.

haveing finished my purchases in the bazaars, i returnned to the hotel ready to set out, and found the dromedarys, camels, and guides, and expected to find the letter for the governor of akaba, which, at the suggestion of mr. linant, i had requestted mr. gliddon to prepare for me i now learnned, however, from that gentleman, that to avoid being delaied, it would be better to go myself, first sendding my caravan outside the gate, and representting to the minister that i was

actually waiting for the letter, in which case he would probably give it to me immediately i accordingly sent paul ahead with orders to halt at the tombs of the califs; and while he was there tarrieing for me, i, accompanied by one of the consul's janizarys, rode up to the door of the governor's palace there and then it was my lot to see a man bastinadoed i had heard much of this punishment, existting, I believe, only in the east, but I had never seen it inflicted before, and hope i shall never see it again as on a former occasion, i found the little governor standding at one end of a large hall of entrance, munching, and trieing causes a crowd was gathered around, and before him was a poor arab, pleadding and beseeching most piteously, while the big tears were rolling down his cheeks near him was a man whose resolute and somewhat angry expression markked him as the accuser, seekking vengeance rather than justice suddenly the governor made a gentle movement with his hand; all noise ceased; all stretched their necks and turned their eager eyes toward him; the accused cut short his crieing, and stood with his mouth wide open, and his eyes fixed upon the governor the latter spoke a few words in a very low voice, to me of course unintelligible, and, indeed, scarcely audible; but they seemmed to fall upon the quick ears of the culprit like bolts of thunder; the agony of suspense was over, and without a word he layed himself down at the feet of the governor a space was immediately cleared around; a man on each side took him by the hand, and stretching out his arms, kneelled upon them to hold them down, while another seatted himself across his neck and shoulders thus nailed to the ground the poor fellow, knowwing that there was no chance of escape, threw up his feet from the knee-joint, so as to present the soles in a horizontal position two men came forward with long stout bars of wood, tyed together by a cord, between which they placed the feet, drawing them together with the cord so as to fix them in their horizontal position, and leave the whole flat surface exposed to the full force of the blow in the mean time two strong turks were standding ready, one at each side, armed with long whips much resembling our common cowskin, only larger, and made of the hide of the hippopotamus while the occupation of the judge was suspended by these preparations, the janizary had presentted the consul's letter my sensibilitys are not particularly acute, but they yieldedd in this instance i had watched all the preliminarys, nerveing myself for what was to come; but when i heard the scourge whizing through the air, and as the first blow fell upon the naked feet, saw the convulsive movements of the body, and heard the first loud, piercing shriek, i could stand it no longer i broke through

the crowd, forgetting the governor and every thing else but the janizary laing hold of me at that instant, hauled me back to the governor in a moment i recollected that my own safety depended upon my not offendding this summary dispenser of justice, and restrainning myself, re-entered his presence the shrieks of the unhappy criminal were ringing through the chamber, but the governor received me with as calm a smile as if he had been siting on his own divan, listenning to the strains of some pleasant music; while i stood with my teeth clenched, and felt the hot breath of the victim, and heard the whizing of the accursed whip, as it fell again and again upon his bleedding feet i have heard men cry out in agony when the sea was rageing, and the drownning man, riseing for the last time upon the mountain waves, turned his imploreing arms toward us, and with his dieing breath called in vain for help; but i never heard such heart-rendding sounds as those from the poor bastinadoed wretch before me i thought the governor would never make an end of readding the letter, when the scribe handed it to him for his signature, although it contained but half a dozen lines; he fumbled in his pocket for his seal, and diped it in the ink; the impression did not seem to suit him, and he made another, and after a delay that seemmed to me eternal, emploied in folding it, handded it to me with a most gracious smile i am sure i grined horribly in return, and snatching the letter, just as the last blow fell, i hastenned to leave the scene the poor scourged wretch was silent; he had found relief in insensibility i cast one look upon the senseless body, and saw the feet layed open in gashes, and the blood streamming down the legs i had to work my way through the crowd, and before i could escape, i saw the poor fellow revive, and after a fruitless attempt to rise, crawl upon his hands and knees to the door of the hall there, i rejoiced to see that, miserable and degraded as he was, he yet had friends whose hearts yearnned toward him; they took him in their arms and carried him away.

LESSON XV.

Let the pupil, with the help of the following questions, write a composition on

BUTTERFLIES.

1. Where are butterflies commonly seen?
2. At what time of the year do they appear?
3. Can you describe the form of a butterfly?

4. In what respects are their wings unlike those of birds?
 5. What color is most frequent among them?
 6. What is it that gives the beautiful colors to the butterfly's wing?
 7. If you touch the wing with your finger, what takes place?
 8. How do cruel children sometimes treat butterflies?
 9. What do they live on?
 10. How do they eat their food?
 11. What becomes of the butterflies when the autumn comes?
 12. Do you know what forms the insect passes through before it becomes a butterfly?
 13. What else do you know about butterflies?
-

LESSON XVI.

SYNONYMS.

PUPIL. What is a *synonym*?

TEACHER. One word is the synonym of another when the two words are so nearly the same in meaning that one can be used in place of the other without changing the meaning of the sentence.

PUPIL. Will you give me an example?

TEACHER. The words *assembly* and *congregation* are synonymous. They both mean a collection of people.

PUPIL. But can we always substitute one of these words for the other, without changing the meaning of the sentence?

TEACHER. Not in every case. Usage makes some difference in the application of the words, even although they mean precisely the same. A collection of people in a church for purposes of worship is commonly called a *congregation*. But if any one were to call a collection of people in a ball-room, about to engage in a dance, a *congregation*, it would provoke a smile. And yet both mean precisely the same thing.

PUPIL. Are there many instances of words meaning the same thing?

TEACHER. A great many in our language. The greater part of our nouns and verbs have synonyms in one or other of their meanings. Sometimes as many as a dozen words will agree in expressing one and the same meaning.

PUPIL. Does not this make the language difficult to learn?

TEACHER. It may have that effect to some extent, but the advantages of it in other respects are very great. And it is highly important for young persons to learn the different uses of words, and to what extent they may be substituted for one another, in order to give freedom and copiousness of expression. A most excellent exercise for learners is to change the words of a discourse, by substituting synonyms for as many as he can. I will give you a model of this exercise:

EXTRACT UNCHANGED.

You should have no secrets which you are unwilling to disclose to your parents. If you have done wrong, you should openly confess it, and ask that forgiveness which a parent's heart is so ready to bestow. If you wish to undertake any thing, ask their consent. Never begin any thing in the hope you can conceal your design. If you once strive to impose on your parents, you will be led on, from one step to another, to invent falsehoods, to practice artifice, till you will become contemptible and hateful. You will soon be detected, and then none will trust you.

THE SAME WITH SYNONYMS SUBSTITUTED.

You *ought* to have no secrets which you are unwilling to *reveal* to your parents. If you have *acted* wrong, you should *frankly acknowledge* it, and *beg* that *pardon* which a parent's heart is so ready to *grant*. If you *desire* to undertake any thing, ask their *permission*. Never *commence* any thing in the hope you can *hide* your *intention*. If you once *endeavor* to impose on your parents, you will be *drawn* on, from one step to another, to *make up lies*, to practice *fraud*, till you *grow to be* despicable and odious. You will soon be found out, and then none will *confide* in you.

Now you may select any plain piece in your reading-book, and do with it as in the foregoing extract. You will find a table or vocabulary of synonyms at the end of this book, which you may use to aid you in hunting up synonyms; but you must use your own judgment in deciding which of all the synonyms given for each word is the best suited to the general meaning.

NOTE TO THE TEACHER.—Let this exercise be submitted to the careful revision of the teacher, who should correct all errors and uncouthness of expression that the pupil may fall into. There is not a more improving exercise than this for young persons, to give them command of language, and a knowledge of the exact force of words. Let it be continued for some time before any further advance is made in this book.

THE PROPRIETIES OF STYLE.

LESSON XVII.

DICTION.

PUPIL. Is there but one right way of saying a thing?

TEACHER. By no means: the most of our thoughts may be expressed in more ways than one; with regard to some thoughts, there is a great variety of ways to express them.

PUPIL. Do not different persons choose different ways to express their thoughts?

TEACHER. Yes; each one has his own way of saying a thing; that is, the way in which he would naturally and most easily express the thought in his mind. This is called his *style*.

PUPIL. And are all styles equally good?

TEACHER. By no means. There are certain rules which no person can transgress without impropriety. But there is a great variety in the ways of expressing a thought, without violating any rule.

PUPIL. Are the rules that we are to observe in our style, many and difficult to learn?

TEACHER. They are quite numerous, but they can be arranged under a few general heads, and mastered with ordinary diligence.

PUPIL. I should like to learn these rules of style so as to make no mistakes in what I say or write.

TEACHER. Before learning the specific rules, I want you to understand the elements of style to which they refer. Look at these different modes of expressing one thought, and observe in what respects they differ:

“Every one must die.”

“All mankind are mortal.”

“Death is the inevitable lot of all.”

“Every man must pay the debt of nature.”

PUPIL. They differ very much: they do not use the same words, and the words are not put together in the same way.

TEACHER. Exactly. Now, these are the two elements of style; the words that are used, and the way the words are put together. These two elements are respectively called *Diction* and *Structure*.

PUPIL. So then, Diction refers to the words that are used, and Structure refers to the way the words are put together.

TEACHER. You have expressed it pretty well. Now some of the rules of style refer to the diction, others to the structure. The rules that refer to the diction of style may be arranged under five general heads, according as they refer—

1. To the *meaning* of the words;
2. To their *currency*;
3. To their *respectability*;
4. To the *quantity* of them;
5. To the *pleasantness* of their sound.

The first of these constitutes what is called the *Propriety* of style; the second, its *Purity*; the third, its *Chastity*; the fourth, its *Precision*; and the fifth, its *Euphony*.

Now, can you write this out in the form of a table or synopsis?

LESSON XVIII.

PROPRIETY OF DICTION.

PUPIL. The Propriety of Style refers to the meaning of the words employed. I do not understand what that means: please explain it to me.

TEACHER. A person's style is said to be *proper* as to its diction, when the words that he uses are the right ones to express his meaning.

PUPIL. Why should any person ever wish to use the wrong word to express what he wants to say?

TEACHER. I do not suppose any person ever *wants* to use a wrong word; but it is not every person that knows exactly what the meaning of every word is. Young persons, or persons not educated, are apt to pick up a word that they hear used once or twice, and use it themselves, having only a vague idea of its meaning; and their guess may be wrong. Or a person may intend to use a certain word, and use some other word that sounds somewhat like it, but has quite a different meaning. Hence young persons who desire to write with propriety, must pay great attention to the meaning of words, and see that they use no word but with its proper meaning.

I will here furnish you with some lists of words that are often misused in this country. See if you can recognize any of them as having been improperly used by persons of your acquaintance.

LIST OF IMPROPRIETIES—No. I.

1. ALLOW—for *expect, intend, or suppose*. "I allow to go this afternoon." "I allow the train is gone by this time."
2. AMBITION—for *spirit, resentment, pluck*. "His ambition was roused, and he was determined to fight."
3. CALL—for *recall, repeat, or pronounce*. "I can not call his name now."
4. CARRY—for *take or lead*. Carry means properly to bear in the hand or arms.
5. CONVENIENT—for *conveniently, near, or at a convenient distance from*. The opposite of this is sometimes expressed by the word *ill-convenient*.
6. CREATURE (pronounced *critter*)—for *horse, steed, nag*.
7. CROWD—for *assembly or collection* of persons. A collection of persons is not called a crowd unless they are within a small space; actually crowded. Hence it is improper to say, "There was a thin crowd at church to-day."
8. DOUGH-FACE—for *mask*. "He wore a dough-face made of fine wire gauze."
9. FUNERAL—for *funeral sermon*. A funeral is a burial, attended by some ceremony, pomp, or form. Hence a funeral can not be preached.
10. HUMAN—for *human being*. "There was not a human about the place."
11. PLUNDER or TRAPS—for *baggage or luggage*. "Bring in your plunder out of the rain."
12. ROCK—for *stone or pebble*. Rock should only be applied to large masses, not to pieces, small enough to grasp with the hand.

TEACHER. You will now take these sentences, and write a *criticism* on each, pointing out all the faults that occur in it, showing how, in each case, the expression is wrong, and what the correct expression is. You will find that the sentences contain, not only violations of propriety, but also of the rules for capitals, for terminal points, and for derivative orthography.

PUPIL. Will you please criticise and correct one sentence as a model for me, so that I may have some idea of what is required to be done?

TEACHER. Very cheerfully. I will select the following sentence :

The crowd was disperseed through the surrounding grove. the Preacher took his stand convenient to the most of them, and delivered a very strikeing discourse on the text what must I do to be saveed.

This sentence contains nine errors ; three in the use of capitals, two in punctuation, two in orthography, and two in propriety of diction.

1. The word *the* before *Preacher*, coming, as it does, after a period, and at the beginning of a sentence, should begin with a capital.

2. The word *preacher* is not a proper noun, nor is it used as a proper noun, and should not, therefore, commence with a capital.

3. The quoted sentence, *What must I do to be saved*, being a sentence complete in itself, should begin with a capital.

4. This quoted sentence is a question, and should have the interrogation point after it, and—

5. Being a quotation, should be marked accordingly,—thus ; “What must I do to be saved?”

6. The radicals *disperse*, *strike*, and *save*, all end in silent *e* : when, therefore, the suffixes *ed* and *ing* are added, the silent final *e* should be dropped.

7. The radical *deliver* is *not* accented on the last syllable, and therefore, when the suffix *ed* is added, the final consonant *r* should not be doubled.

8. The use of the word *crowd* is an impropriety in diction : the proper word is *assembly*, or *multitude*, or *congregation*.

9. The word *convenient* is also improperly used for *adjacent*.

SENTENCES TO BE CRITICISED.

My critter has as much sense as a human.

I can not call who it was that preached the funeral, but it was a very pathetic discourse.

I allow to carry my crop of cotton to Savannah.

I never saw a dog have so much ambition : he will attack any thing, even a lion, if it should dare to enter my front yard.

I left my plunder on the platform convenient to the cotton-scales ; but when I came to look for it, it was gone.

Just as I went out of the house, somebody with a dough-face on jumped at me to scare me. but I pickked up a little rock, and let fly at him, and he vanished. I allowed it was one of the same crowd that wanted to get me into a difficulty about my politics; but there is not a human on earth that can make me back down or run, by such means as that.

LESSON XIX.

LIST OF IMPROPRIETIES—No. II.

1. APPLICANT—for *student*; as if *apply* always had reference to *mental* application. An *applicant* is one who makes request or demand of another for something to be conferred or granted.
2. AWFUL, DREADFUL, or SHOCKING—for *very* or *exceedingly*, or some other adverb. This is a double error: these words are adjectives, and can not qualify other adjectives. It is improper to use them in connection with qualities that can not *shock* one, or produce *awe* or *dread*.
3. BEE-GUM—for *bee-hive*.
4. BETTER—for *more*; as, "Better than a week."
5. CALCULATE—for *design* or *intend*. "I calculate to sow this field in wheat next spring."
6. CIRCULATE—for *travel about* or *around*, not strictly in circuit. *Circulate* is not properly applied to the movements of persons.
7. DEMEAN—for *debase*. To *demean* is to behave in any way, properly or otherwise. To *debase* is to degrade, to make mean or low.
8. DIFFICULTED—put to inconvenience; as if *difficult* were a verb.
9. EFFORT—for *essay* or *work*, either literary or oratorical. The word *effort* seems to imply that the work required great labor or exertion to produce it.
10. EMBLEM—for *motto*, *sentiment*, or *meaning*. This is a misapplication of the term from the sign to the thing signified. When a certain sentiment is associated with a certain flower, it is the flower that is the emblem of the sentiment, and not the sentiment an emblem of the flower. An emblem is always a tangible and visible object, standing for some *idea*, which, of course, is not tangible or visible.

11. ENJOY—for *experience*, in connection with an object that can not give joy.
12. FELLOWSHIP—for *affiliate* or *fraternize* with; as if *fellowship* were a verb.
13. FITTEN (corrupted from *fitting*)—for *fit*, the adjective.
14. FIX—for *condition*, *arrangement*, or *predicament*; as if *fix* were a noun.
15. FIXINS (corrupted from *fixings*)—for *fixtures*, *appendages*, or *dressing*. “Bring a slice of lamb with the fixins.”

SENTENCES TO BE CRITICISED.

I calculate your Brother will get the prize; he has been such a close applicant all the session.

It was so awful hot in new orleans during our recent visit there, that we could not circulate much through the City.

If you persist in such conduct, you will demean yourself and your family beyond recovery.

If you do not change your habits and plans, you will get your affairs in such a fix that you will be difficulted to extricate yourself.

The funeral of Col. Strong was a noble effort of the eloquent Preacher, but some condemned it as too laudatory.

Miss jane, I allow that you are versed in all the language of flowers; please tell me the emblem of japonica?

Mr. Johnson, if you will sell drams, after all that the Church has said about it, I, for one, can not fellowship you.

Place the dish of fixins convenient to the Turkey, so that you can help the crowd more expeditiously.

Your “critter” is dreadful wild. I allow you are much difficulted in managing him. Why don’t you carry him to the horse-tamer?

LESSON XX.

LIST OF IMPROPRIETIES—No. III.

1. HAVE—for *must* before a passive infinitive. It is not improper to say, “I have to finish this work to-night;” but we can not say, “This work has to be finished to-night.”
2. HATE—for *dislike*. The error consists in using too strong a term. We may dislike some things or some persons; but if we *hate*, it must be *persons* that we hate.

3. **HEAP**—for *deal* or *much*. “I think a heap of him.”
4. **IDLE**—for *indolent* or *lazy*. *Idle* means not at work; *indolent*, not disposed to work. *Idle* is opposed to *busy*; *indolent* to *industrious*.
5. **INCIDENT**—for *liable*. We can say, “The trials incident to human life;” but not “The trials to which human life is incident.”
6. **INSIDE OF**—for *within*, referring to a certain period of time, or amount of space.
7. The verb **LAY, LAID, LAID**—for the verb *lie, lay, lain*. The first expresses action, and is transitive; the other does not express action, and is intransitive. A few examples of the correct usage of these verbs will make their distinction plain.

He laid his burden down.	There his burden lay for an hour.
He laid himself down to sleep.	While sleeping, he lay as still as death.
He always lays his head upon the pillow.	He lies with his head upon the pillow.
I have laid my hat on this table every day for a year.	My hat has lain on this table for a whole year.
I might have laid the pig on his side in the cart.	But the pig would not have lain there a single moment after I released him.
8. **LICK**—for *blow, stroke, or exertion*. “He gave the boy a lick with the back of his hand.”
9. **LIKE**—for *disposed to, or as if, or as it were*. “I do not feel like singing.” “I feel like I’m on my journey home.”
10. **LOSS**—for *lose*. *Loss* is a noun; the verb is *lose*.
11. **LIFT**—for *take up*, in connection with the noun *collection*.
12. **LOTS**—for *great quantities*. Often found in connection with *cords*; for example, “There are lots and cords of chestnuts on that tree.”
13. **LOVE**—for *like*. Applying to *things* a word that can be properly applied only to *persons*. It is improper to say “I love oysters.”
14. **MAD**—for *angry, vexed, or provoked*. *Mad* properly means *insane*. It is sometimes figuratively applied to a man in such a towering passion as to be, in a manner, insane. Ordinarily, it is too strong a word.

SENTENCES TO BE CRITICISED.

I laid all night, thinking of the dangers to which my enterprise was incident; and in the morning I did not feel like going any further in it.

If your Father persists in that enterprise, he will loss both his money and his reputation.

I make it a point never to strike a child a lick when I am mad: it always does more harm than good.

There is a heap of things that have to be done before I lay down to sleep to-night.

I do not feel like doing the work that another might have done, if he had not been so idle. it makes me mad to see people impose their burdens on others.

Our life in this world is always incident to such trials as this.

I love onions, but I hate the smell of them on one's breath.

The distance from milan to the Palazzo Simonetti, where the wonderful Echo is to be heard, is inside of three miles.

The horse had too much ambition to let me carry him over such a quagmire.

After we enterred the Ball-room, we saw a heap of dough-faces; indeed almost every body in the crowd wore a dough-face: I was afraid I should loss myself amongst them.

I have seen him mad lots of times, and I do not feel like haveing much to do with him.

He is too idle to strike a lick at any kind of work.

LESSON XXI.

With the help of the following questions write a composition on

B E E S.

1. What other insect does a bee most resemble?
2. In what kind of places do bees live?
3. Would you call the bee a wild or a domestic animal? Why?
4. Are there different kinds of bees living together in the same hive?
5. Which is the numerous class of bees in a hive?
6. How do the working bees employ themselves during pleasant weather?

7. Where do they find the wax of which they build their cells?
8. How do they obtain the honey?
9. Is the sweet substance found in the inside of flowers the same as honey in the comb?
10. How do the bees make bee-bread?
11. What do the bees build the cells for?
12. Which one of the bees lays the eggs?
13. When an egg is hatched, does there come out a bee fully formed?
14. Do you know what the worm that is hatched from an insect's egg is called?
15. What makes the bees divide, and swarm off?
16. How do the country-people manage to catch a swarm that is flying away?
17. How do they manage to get out the honey-comb without being stung?
18. Why is it wrong to take away the honey-comb from a hive late in the summer?

LESSON XXII.

LIST OF IMPROPRIETIES—No. IV.

1. MIDDLING—for *moderately* or *tolerably*.
2. MIND—for *remember*. "I do n't mind to have seen the word before."
3. MISERY—for *pain* in the body.
4. MONSTROUS—for *very* or *enormously*.
5. MEAN—for *unkind, unjust, oppressive*. "They did every thing that was mean to Joseph."
6. MEANNESS—for *base conduct*.
7. MOURNER—for *penitent*; as if we never mourned over any thing but our sins.
8. MOVE—for *remove*. *Move* is properly transitive, and should be followed by an object, such as *residence* or *abode*. *Remove* is the proper word to be used in this sense.
9. NAME—for *mention*. "I never named the circumstance to any one."
10. NEVER—for *not*, applied to a limited time. "I never spoke a word the whole evening."

11. OBLIGED—for *must*, applied to *logical* necessity. "This bill is obliged to be correct, because I counted the articles, fixed the prices myself, and we have both counted it up twice."
12. OF—for *have*. This error is almost too flagrant to be put upon paper. It arises from a careless way of pronouncing *have*, which some young and ignorant persons take to be *of*. "He would of done it, if I had of let him alone." (Observe the double error in this last clause.)
13. POWER—for *deal* or *great quantity*. "This field will bring a power of corn."
14. PREDICATE—for *found* or *base*, applied to arguments or propositions.
15. PROUD—for *glad* or *gratified*.
16. PUNISH—for *afflict* or *put in pain*. To *punish* is to put in pain in consequence of wrong-doing. But if the idea of penalty is not involved in the infliction, it is not punishment.
17. POWERFUL or MIGHTY—for *very* or *exceedingly*. Adjective for adverb, and too strong a word; often inapplicable.

SENTENCES TO BE CRITICISED.

I shall be obliged to move to some place more convenient to church.

He looked so awful mad during the whole time of my stay, that I never named the matter that chiefly induced me to call on him.

We had a monstrous fine meeting; there were better than forty mourners, and some got mighty happy.

The Preacher seemed to know just what kind of a man I was, and told out all my meanness like he had seen it.

I could of gotten down under the benches, I felt so ashamed. I did not feel fitten to sit among humans.

The Preacher predicated his strongest arguments on the fact that every man feels and knows himself to be accountable for his conduct.

Doctor, this liniment that you gave me, makes the misery worse; I do not see the use of punishing myself in that way?

I do n't mind that I ever said that I was proud when you came to see me, and still prouder when you went away.

LESSON XXIII.

LIST OF IMPROPRIETIES—No. V.

1. RAISE—for *rear* or *bring up*, in speaking of children. We *raise* corn or hogs; we *rear* or *bring up* children.
2. RUN—for *leak*.
3. SCARED—for *afraid*. *Scared* seems to imply something *done* by the terrifying object.
4. SENSATION—for *emotion*. The former is felt in the body, or is caused by something affecting one of the senses; the latter is wholly in the mind, and is caused by some conception or belief.
5. SHUT—for *rid*. "I was glad to get shut of him at last." This is a corruption of the word *shot*—*discharged*.
6. SIGHT—for *great quantity*.
7. SOME or SOMETHING—for *somewhat*, used adverbially. "This land is something better than mine."
8. The verb SET, SET, SET—for the verb *sit*, *sat*, *sat*. *Set* is often transitive, and implies action; *sit* implies no action and is intransitive. The following is proper: "He *sits* in the chair that you have *set* for him, and where he has often *sat* before."
9. SPELL—for *while* or *time* or *turn*. "First we plowed a spell; then we knocked off, and went a fishing."
10. SPLENDID—for *very fine*, applied without any discrimination. "A splendid silk stocking." "A splendid teacher."
11. STAB (pronounced *stob*)—for *stake*. "Mark out your line with stabs."
12. SUSPICION—for *suspect*; the noun used as a verb.
13. TIGHT—for *close* at a bargain;—or for *tipsy*, *intoxicated*.
14. TYPIFY—to *represent*. A type does represent, it is true; but there are things which represent, and yet are not types. A type *resembles* the thing it represents.
15. VERBIAGE—for *phraseology*. In order to have *verbiage*, a style must be *wordy*. Then the unnecessary amount of words used is the *verbiage*.
16. WITHOUT—for *unless*. *Without* is a preposition, *unless* a conjunction.
17. HEALTHY—for *healthful* or *wholesome*. "I do not think it is healthy to eat cake."
18. WORST—for *make worse*. "I am afraid I have worsted my case a good deal."

SENTENCES TO BE CRITICISED.

A monstrous polite young man asked me to accept a flower with its emblem, but I did not feel like taking it until I knew what the flower typified.

The fact is, I was scared of the whole company all the time I was in the room; so I thought I would come out for a spell, and try to calm myself.

The verbiage of your letter is very correct: I wish I could raise my children to do such nice things.

Drive a stab wherever you want a post to go, and I will sit one right at the spot.

I suspicioned that mr. J. was something tight, yesterday afternoon.

The sensation of hope is never experienced, without you have some good in prospect.

We have a splendid new cistern, but I suspicion that it must run some.

Do set up straight. I wish I could get shut of such unpleasant companions as these that lean on you all the time.

If you want to raise hearty children, always give them healthy food, and never let them set up late at night.

If my critter gets scared at a bridge, I am dreadful difficulted to get him over it.

LESSON XXIV.

LIST OF IMPROPRIETIES—No. VI.

1. AGGRAVATE—for *irritate, provoke*.
2. ALL SORTS OF—for *excellent, first-rate*.
3. BAD OFF—for *ill*.
4. BAD OFF FOR—for *in distressing want of*.
5. BEING AS—for *inasmuch as, since*.
6. TO BE OF A MIND TO—for *have a mind to*.
7. BLOW—for *boast, brag*.
8. BOUND—for *determined, resolved*.
9. COME OF—for *outgrow, get over*.
10. CONSIDERABLE OF—for *a considerable*.
11. DIRT—for *earth, soil, ground*.
12. DOES NOT BEGIN TO BE—for *is not near*.

13. EXPERIENCE—without an adjective—for *religious experience*.
14. EXPERIENCE RELIGION OR GET RELIGION—for *experience conversion, become religious*.
15. HAVE GOT—for *am obliged*.
16. HOW COME—for *how so, or how did it happen*.
17. INTERFERE WITH—for *molest*.
18. KIND O', or SORT O'—for *rather, or somewhat*.
19. LET ON—for *disclose, or intimate*.
20. LIKE—for *as, or as if*.
21. MAKE OUT—for *succeed*.
22. MAKE OUT LIKE—for *pretend that*.
23. MIXED UP—for *promiscuous*.
24. MOST—for *almost*.
25. NO-COUNT—for *worthless*. Corrupted from the phrase of *no account*, which is proper.
26. NOTIONS—for *small wares, trifles*.
27. PITCH IN—for *fall to, begin upon*.
28. POSTED—for *fully informed*.
29. RICH—for *entertaining or amusing*.
30. SMART CHANCE—for *considerable quantity*.
31. SCARE UP—for *find, hunt up*.
32. SHINPLASTER—for a *fractional or small-change note*.
33. SURE ENOUGH—for *veritable, genuine*.
34. SPOIL OUT—for *rub out*.
35. STUMP—for *confound, put to a non-plus*.
36. TAKE ON—for *make an ado*.
37. TRANSPIRE—for *happen, take place*.
38. WHAT FOR—for *what kind of, or how good*.

SENTENCES TO BE CRITICISED.

We are mighty bad off for corn in our neighborhood.

I do not allow this is a sure-enough gold watch, but being as it is so cheap, I will buy it.

The whole crowd was invited into the supper-room, where they soon pitched into the good things provided.

I'm of a great mind to go to the circus this afternoon; but I'm sort o' doubtful about its being respectable.

He has a bad habit of sitting with his under jaw hanging down; but I hope he will come of it after a while.

I think he's considerable of a book-keeper now; but he does not begin to be such a scribe as his uncle.

I've got to go to school at two o'clock; but I don't think the teacher will take on much if I am kind o' tardy.

I did not understand a word that he was saying, but I never let on. How did you make out with your speech yesterday.

Oh, it was a mixed up crowd, and the most of them were no-count people, that it is no use talking to. so I didn't care much what I said.

What for an orator is that man. He has a right smart chance of wit, and the people take on powerful about him; but I do not think he is a man of strong common sense.

I am fully posted on all the events that transpired on that evening.

LESSON XXV.

IMPROPRIETIES IN THE USE OF PREPOSITIONS.

PUPIL. Why are improprieties so often made in the use of prepositions?

TEACHER. Because prepositions express relations, and relations are sometimes difficult to distinguish.

PUPIL. Is there any difference between the relation expressed by *between*, and that expressed by *among*?

TEACHER. Yes. *Between* is used in connection with two things only; *among* with any number more than two. For example, we say—"between two stars"—but "among the seven stars." But if the term "the Seven Stars" be taken as the proper name of a constellation, we might say—"between the Seven Stars and the North Pole Star:" here the parties are two.

PUPIL. In changing the active to the passive form, I found we had to put the agent of the verb in an adjunct with the preposition *by*. Does *by* always govern the agent?

TEACHER. It generally governs the agent or cause.

The accompaniment or instrument is put in an adjunct with *with*. As, "The cow was killed by a butcher with a knife." Here butcher is the agent, and knife the instrument.

PUPIL. The word that follows *by*, then, is not always the agent.

TEACHER. Certainly not. Sometimes *by* governs a remote means or accompaniment of the action. For example: "I write with a gold pen *by* candle-light." Here *pen* is the immediate means or instrument, *candle-light* is the remote means or circumstance.

PUPIL. I find some difficulty in the proper discrimination of the prepositions *to*, *in*, and *into*. Can you point out the exact differences among them?

TEACHER. Their differences can be best understood by considering the relation that they respectively sustain to the *boundary* of the place they refer to. *To* approaches this boundary, but does not pass beyond it. *Into* crosses the line from outside to within. *In* does not go beyond the boundary from inside to outside. For example: I meet a person on the road from Nashville to Cave City. He tells me he is going *to* Louisville; approaching it from some point outside, more or less remote. I meet a wagoner on the Bardstown Pike, and he says he is going *into* the city of Louisville; will cross its boundary from outside to within. He asks me where I live, and I answer, "*In* Louisville." My residence is *inside* of the boundary, and has no connection with what is beyond.

EXERCISE.

SENTENCES TO BE CRITICISED.

The sultry day was followed with a heavy storm of rain.

There is constant hostility between these several tribes.

After I had journied about six miles, I was passed with a beggar by a bundle in his hand.

We rode in the market into a wagon drawn with four horses.

A man had four sons, and he divided his property between them.
 The diploma was written with an elegant scribe by a steel pen.
 The letter was written by elegance, with gas-light.
 The vessel will sail directly from New Orleans into New York.
 That schooner was built to New York.
 Between all these girls, I find no jealousy, corroding their hearts.
 The box was sent back with the next train.
 The vegetables were sold with Peter, and bought by alacrity with the housekeepers.
 Send the message by dispatch with telegraph.
 The clouds brightenned in splendor, and then faded into gloom.
 I never hated to see any thing done with a lady so much in my life.

LIST OF PREPOSITIONS

AS REQUIRED BY GOOD USAGE AFTER CERTAIN WORDS.

<i>Abhorrence</i> OF—whatever is abhorred.	<i>Affection</i> FOR—a person.
<i>Abound</i> IN or WITH—what is abundant.	<i>Agree</i> WITH—a person.
<i>Abridge</i> OF—what is taken away.	<i>Agree</i> TO—a proposition.
<i>Absent</i> FROM—a place.	<i>Agree</i> UPON—a settlement or course.
<i>Accommodate</i> TO—what we can not help.	<i>Agreeable</i> TO—a person.
<i>Accommodate</i> WITH—things desired.	<i>Alter</i> TO—some other form.
<i>Accord</i> WITH—agree with.	<i>Alteration</i> IN—the thing changed.
<i>Accuse</i> OF—a crime.	<i>Amerce</i> IN or OF—the penalty.
<i>Acquaint</i> WITH—objects to be known.	<i>Analogy</i> TO—some other thing.
<i>Acquit</i> OF—a charge.	<i>Analogy</i> BETWEEN—two things.
<i>Acquiesce</i> IN—a sentiment or proposal.	<i>Antipathy</i> TO (rarely AGAINST)—a thing.
<i>Admonish</i> OF—a fault or its consequences.	<i>Approve</i> (with or without OF)—a thing.
<i>Admission</i> TO—a person.	<i>Array</i> WITH or IN—apparel, etc.
<i>Admission</i> INTO—a place.	<i>Ascendant</i> OVER—a person.
<i>Advantage</i> OVER—a rival or adversary.	<i>Ask</i> OF—a person.
<i>Advantage</i> OF—what benefits us.	<i>Ask</i> FOR—a thing.
<i>Affinity</i> TO or WITH—any thing.	<i>Ask</i> AFTER—what we seek to know.
	<i>Associate</i> WITH—a person.
	<i>Assure</i> OF—a fact.
	<i>Averse</i> TO or FROM—the thing disliked.

Believe (transitive)—an assertion or its author.

Believe IN—a principle or a character.

Believe ON—a deliverer.

Bereave OF—what is taken away.

Bestow ON or UPON—the beneficiary.

Betray TO—an adversary or pursuer.

Betray INTO—a course not intended.

Boast OF—what we glory in.

Blush AT—what we are ashamed of.

Border ON or UPON—what is adjoining.

Call ON—a person.

Call AT—a place.

Capacity FOR—what can be done or contained.

Careful OF—the object of care.

Change FOR—a substitute.

Change TO or INTO—something different.

Charge ON—what is attacked.

Charge WITH—a commission.

Compare WITH—in order to judge.

Compare TO—in order to illustrate.

Composed OF—the components.

Concede TO—a person or a request.

Concur WITH—a person.

Concur IN—a measure.

Concur TO—an effect.

Condescend TO—a person or thing.

Confer ON or UPON—a beneficiary.

Confer WITH—a counselor.

Confide IN—a person or principle.

Conformable TO (seldom WITH)—a pattern or rule.

Congenial TO—a person.

Congratulate ON or UPON—good experienced.

Consist OF—ingredients.

Consist IN—its equivalent.

Conversant WITH—men.

Conversant IN—things.

Convict OF—a crime charged.

Copy AFTER—a person.

Copy FROM—a thing.

Correspond WITH—what is consistent.

Correspond TO—what is suitable or analogous.

Cured OF—a disease or fault.

Defend (others) FROM.

Defend (ourselves) AGAINST.

Depend ON or UPON—a person or thing.

Deprive OF—what is taken away.

Derogate FROM { —that which
Derogatory TO { is lessened in
some respect.

Devolve ON—a person.

Die OF—a disease.

Die BY—a means or method.

Differ WITH—a person in opinion.

Differ FROM—any person or thing in some attribute or quality.

Difficulty OF—an action, as one.

Difficulty IN—a course of action.

Diminution OF—the thing lessened.

Disagree WITH—a person.

Disagree TO—a proposal.

Disagreeable TO—a person or thing.

Disappointed OF—what we fail to get.

Disappointed IN—what we have gotten.

Discourage FROM—any course of action.

Discouragement TO—the person discouraged.

Disgusted AT or WITH—a thing.

Dispose OF—a thing.

Disposed TO—a course of action.

Dispossess OF—a thing.

Disqualify FOR—an action.

Divested OF—a thing.

Divide BETWEEN—two.

Divide AMONG—more than two.

Enamored WITH—a person or thing.

Encroach ON or UPON—a space.

Endeavor AFTER—a thing.

Engage IN—a work.

Engage FOR—a time.

Enjoin UPON—a person.

Equal TO or WITH—a person or thing.

Equivalent TO—a thing.

Espouse TO—a person.

Estimate AT—a price.

Exception FROM—a number.

Exception TO—a rule or statement.

Exception AT—what is offensive.

Exclusive OF—what is left out.

Expert AT (before a noun).

Expert IN (before a participle).

Fall FROM—an elevation.

Fall INTO—a lower place.

Fall UNDER—disgrace or censure.

Fall TO—what is done eagerly.

Fall UPON—an enemy, etc.

Familiar—a thing is familiar TO us.

Familiar—we are familiar WITH things.

Fawn ON or UPON—a person.

Followed BY—the follower.

Fond OF—a person or thing.

Foreign FROM or TO—a thing or person.

Found ON—what lies under the foundation.

Found IN—what surrounds the foundation.

Free FROM—what is absent.

Fruitful IN—what is produced.

Full OF—what fills.

Glad OF—something good for ourselves.

Glad AT—the good fortune of another.

Grateful TO—a person.

Grateful FOR—what is bestowed.

Hanker AFTER—a thing.

Hinder FROM—doing.

Incorporate substances INTO a whole.

Incorporate one WITH another.

Inculcate ON—a person.

Independent OF—a person or thing.

Indulge WITH—a thing not habitual.

Indulge IN—a thing habitual.

Indulgent TO—a person.

Inform OF or ABOUT—a subject.

Initiate INTO—a place.

Initiate IN—an art.

Inoculate WITH—an influence or substance.

Inroad INTO—a region.

Inseparable FROM—a person or thing.

Insinuate INTO—a thing.

Insist UPON—a thing.

Inspection (superintendence) OVER—a person or thing.

Inspection (prying) **INTO**—a thing.

Instruct **IN**—a thing.

Intent **ON** or **UPON**—a thing.

Interfere **WITH**—a person or thing.

Introduce **INTO**—a place.

Introduce **TO**—a person.

Intrude **INTO**—a place inclosed.

Intrude **UPON**—a person or place not inclosed.

Inured **TO**—a thing.

Invested **IN**—apparel.

Invested **WITH**—rights or power.

Level **WITH**—a line or grade.

Listen **TO**—a person or sound.

Long **FOR** or **AFTER**—a thing.

Look **ON**—what is present.

Look **FOR**—what is absent.

Look **AFTER**—what is distant.

Made **OF**—the material.

Marry **TO**—a person.

Martyr **TO** or **FOR**—a cause.

Militate **AGAINST**—a thing or person.

Mistrustful **OF**—a person or thing.

Need **OF**—a thing.

Obedient **TO**—a person or command.

Object **TO** or **AGAINST**—a person or thing.

Obtrude **ON** or **UPON**—a person or thing.

Occasion **OF**—an event.

Occasion **FOR**—a measure or means.

Offensive **TO**—a person.

Operate **ON** or **UPON**—a person or thing.

Opposite **TO**—a thing.

Participate **IN**—a thing.

Partake **OF**—a thing.

Penetrate **INTO**—a place or thing.

Persevere **IN**—a work.

Pour **IN**—a substance or quality.

Prefer (promote) **ABOVE**—another.

Prefer (elect)—one **TO** another.

Preferable **TO**—another.

Prefix **TO**—a word.

Prejudice **AGAINST**—a person or thing.

Preside **OVER**—an assembly or nation.

Prevent **FROM**—doing something.

Prevail (persuade) **WITH**, **ON**, or **UPON**—a person.

Prevail (overcome) **OVER** or **AGAINST**—an opponent.

Prey **ON** or **UPON**—a thing.

Productive **OF**—the substance produced.

Profit **BY**—a thing.

Protect. (See *Defend.*)

Pronounce **AGAINST**—a person.

Pronounce **ON**—a thing.

Provide **WITH**—provisions.

Provide **FOR**—an emergency.

Proud **OF**—a person or thing.

Quarrel **WITH**—a person.

Reckon **ON** or **UPON**—a favorable contingency.

Reconcile a person **TO** another or **TO** a thing.

Reconcile **WITH**—what seems inconsistent.

Reduce (subdue) **UNDER**—power.

Reduce **TO**—the ultimate condition.

Reflect **ON** or **UPON**—a thing.

Regard (esteem) **FOR**—a person.

Regard **TO**—the part considered.

Replete **WITH**—what is abundant.

<i>Rely</i> UPON or ON—a person or thing.	<i>Strip</i> OF—what is taken off or away.
<i>Reproach</i> FOR—a fault.	<i>Submit</i> TO—a person or thing.
<i>Resemblance</i> TO—a person or thing.	<i>Suerve</i> FROM—a course.
<i>Resolve</i> ON—a course.	<i>Taste</i> OF—what is actually enjoyed.
<i>Respect</i> TO (sometimes OF)—a person or thing.	<i>Taste</i> FOR—what we can enjoy.
<i>Restore</i> TO—a person or condition.	<i>Tax</i> WITH—a charge or a burden.
<i>Rich</i> IN—a substance or quality.	<i>Tax</i> FOR—a purpose.
<i>Rob</i> OF—possessions.	<i>Thankful</i> FOR—what has been received.
<i>Rule</i> OVER—subjects.	<i>Unite</i> (transitive) TO . . . { a per-
<i>Satisfied</i> WITH—what satisfies.	<i>Unite</i> (intransitive) WITH { son or
<i>Share</i> IN or OF—a thing.	thing.
<i>Sick</i> OF—a disease, or what disgusts.	<i>Unison</i> WITH—a thing.
<i>Significant</i> OF—the meaning.	<i>Useful</i> FOR—a purpose.
<i>Similar</i> TO—something.	<i>Value</i> ON or UPON—merits.
<i>Sink</i> INTO—what receives.	<i>Vest</i> IN—the possessor.
<i>Sink</i> BENEATH—what overwhelms.	<i>Vest</i> WITH—the thing possessed.
<i>Skillful</i> AT (before a participle).	<i>Wait</i> ON or UPON—a person or event.
<i>Skillful</i> IN (before a noun).	<i>Witness</i> OF—a transaction.
	<i>Worthy</i> OF—award.

LESSON XXVI.

EXERCISE.

IMPROPRIETIES TO BE CRITICISED.

The case has no resemblance with the other.
Congress consists in a Senate and House of Representatives.
Of what does happiness consist?
The government is based in republican principles.
The Saxons reduced the Britons to their own power.
Said client believed that said judge is prejudiced to his cause.
Religion and membership may differ widely from each other.
The judge is disqualified from deciding in this case.
He was accused with acting unfairly.
Colonel Washington was very ill with a fever.

You may rely in what I say, and confide on his honesty.

This is a very different dinner to what we had yesterday.

The bird flew up in the tree.

What is my grief in comparison of that which she bears?

I find no difficulty of keeping up with my class.

About two months ago he walked out of a fine morning by a bundle in his hand.

After an interesting conversation for an hour's length, we participated of a light repast.

She is bereft from all her children.

I do not concur in my wife with her puritanical notions.

This remark is founded with truth.

He was eager of recommending the measure to his fellow-citizens.

I find great difficulty of writing now.

Not every change is a change to the better.

Changed for a worse shape, it can not be.

It is important, at times of trial, to have a friend to whom you can confide.

You may rely in the truth of what he says.

Many have profited from good advice who have not been grateful of it.

I have no occasion of his services.

Favors are not always bestowed to the most deserving.

This article is very different to that.

Virtue and vice differ widely with each other.

We rode into a carriage drawn with four horses.

Such conduct can not be reconciled to your profession.

Go, and be reconciled with thy brother.

I am now engaged with that work.

This measure will be productive in incalculable evils.

If he will be obedient under his instructions he will not be punished.

I listened at him for more than an hour, but could not understand him.

Then the Lawyer spoke up sharply, and said were you a witness to this fight, Mr. Caldwell.

This string is not in unison to that one, nor has its tone any resemblance with it.

I unite to the Preacher in giving thanks for common mercies.

I have no taste of painted statues; I think they are dreadful coarse.

LESSON XXVII.

With the aid of the following questions write a composition on

FROGS.

1. Where do frogs live?
2. Are they to be seen or heard in very cold weather?
3. Where are they hid in winter?
4. What is among the first sounds we hear in the opening spring?
5. What is the shape of a frog when first hatched from the egg?
6. How do tadpoles manage to move about in the water?
7. How do tadpoles change into frogs? By first drawing up into a stupid state like the caterpillar?
8. Do you know how frogs make their singing or croaking noise?
9. Is there much difference in the tones of young frogs and old ones?
10. What do frogs live on?
11. What animals prey on frogs?
12. Did you ever hear of frogs being dressed and cooked, and eaten by men?
13. What is the difference between a frog and a toad?

 LESSON XXVIII.

CONFOUNDING OF PARONYMS.

PUPIL. In my composition on Frogs, speaking of the French people eating frogs, I said—"I expect they think them very nice eating." You said that the use of the word *expect* in that sentence was an impropriety. Will you explain why it is so?

TEACHER. Willingly. To *expect* is to look forward to something in the future, believing it will soon appear or come to pass. To *suspect* is to imagine as probable that something exists which does not appear. We *suspect* what may now exist; we *expect* what is to come.

PUPIL. Are not both of these words derived from the same root?

TEACHER. They are, in the Latin. Words that are derived from a common root are called *paronyms*; and the kind of error which you committed goes by the name of—"the confounding of paronyms." It is a very common sort of impropriety.

I will now furnish you with a list of such words as are apt to be improperly used, by being confounded with their paronyms.

LIST OF PARONYMS LIABLE TO BE CONFOUNDED.

No. I.

1. ABJURE—ADJURE.

Abjure—to swear away from; to renounce.

Adjure—to swear to; to put an oath to one; to ask him to confirm his word by an oath.

2. ACCIDENT—INCIDENT.

Accident—a chance occurrence, or a property that a person or thing may possess, or may not.

Incident—an occurrence simply, not regarded as a thing of chance.

3. AFFECTION—AFFECTATION.

Affection—a love or attachment for a person; an unusual condition of the body or some member of it.

Affectation—the feigning or assuming of some characteristic trait or quality, either of body or mind.

4. ARTIST—ARTISAN.

Artist—one who practices any of the ornamental or fine arts; such as painting, sculpture, music, etc.

Artisan—one who practices any of the useful or necessary arts; as carpentry, masonry, working in iron, etc.

5. BARBARITY—BARBARISM.

Barbarity—cruelty; conduct such as could be expected only of barbarians.

Barbarism—An uncivilized state or condition; an offense against purity of style or language.

6. BENEFICENT—BENEFICIAL.

A *person* is *beneficent* who habitually does good to his fellow-beings.

A *measure* or *transaction* is *beneficial*, if it is productive of good to some party or other, or of more good than evil.

7. BRUTAL—BRUTISH.

A person is said to be *brutal* when he lacks the pity, the mercy, or the sympathy of a human being.

One is said to be *brutish* who seems to lack the intelligence or self-respect of a human being.

8. CEREMONIOUS—CEREMONIAL.

A person is *ceremonious* who is fond of ceremony, and brings it in on every occasion.

A law is called *ceremonial* when it prescribes certain forms and ceremonies.

9. COLLEAGUE—COLLEGIAN.

A *colleague* is one who is united with another in the same office, bound by the same duties, etc., but not a partner in trade.

A *collegian* is a member of a college, either as a graduate or under-graduate.

10. CONSUL—COUNSEL.

A *consul* is an agent maintained by one nation in the port of another nation, to protect its mercantile interests in that port.

The lawyer or lawyers whose legal advice is asked by a person are called his *counsel*.

11. CONSCIENCE—CONSCIOUSNESS.

Conscience—the mental faculty by which we tell right from wrong.

Consciousness—the knowledge that we have of what we are doing, or thinking about.

12. CORPOREAL—CORPORAL.

Corporeal—material; having a substantial body; not spiritual.

Corporal—belonging to the body.

13. CREDIBLE—CREDULOUS.

A narrative is *credible* when it may reasonably be believed.

A person is *credulous* who is easily influenced by the statements of others.

SENTENCES TO BE CRITICISED.

Ever since my uncle came to his death with intemperance, I have adjured spirituous liquor.

Did I tear your umbrella; I assure you it was quite an incident.

Her taking on so about the death of the young man was all a piece of affection.

I lose all patience at seeing such barbarism inflicted on a poor brute.

We think the plan you propose is far more beneficent than the other.

Such mistakes as this betray a brutal stupidity in the author of them.

All the ceremonious laws of Moses were abrogated with the Christian dispensation.

I have seen many a colleague that could not construe his own diploma.

The Turkish counsel at Tangiers seemed to have no consciousness on the subject of exacting fees for his services.

Corporeal diseases are much less difficult to cure than mental ones.

The story of a man's appearing in two distant places at the same hour of the same day, is not credulous.

This book-case was made with a sure-enough artist; I could tell that mighty soon, as quick as I sat my eyes upon it.

LESSON XXIX.

LIST OF PARONYMS LIABLE TO BE CONFOUNDED.

No. II.

1. CRITIC—CRITIQUE.

A *critic* is a person who criticises.

A *critique* is a piece of composition embodying a critic's views of some work.

2. DEFACE—EFFACE.

These words are distinguished by their objects. The proper object of *deface* is some surface, or some object whose face is injured by the act of defacing. The proper object of *efface* is what is written or painted on some surface.

3. DECLINE—DECLENSION—DECLINATION.

The verb *decline* is used in four different senses, and the nouns corresponding to them are different.

1. To go into a worse state.
2. To repeat the several cases of a noun.
3. To depart from the standard direction.
4. To refuse to give up; not to accept or comply.

For the first of these meanings the corresponding noun is *decline*; for the second, *declension*; for the third, *declination*; for the fourth, *declinature*.

4. DURANCE—DURATION.

Durance—imprisonment. *Duration*—continuance of time.

5. EMIGRANT—IMMIGRANT.

Emigrant—one who removes out of the country.

Immigrant—one who moves into the country.

6. EMINENT—IMMINENT.

Eminent—conspicuous; notable.

Imminent—impending; threatening every moment to occur.

7. EQUAL—EQUIVALENT—EQUABLE.

Equal—having the same dimensions.

Equivalent—amounting to the same thing, or having the same value in a certain respect.

Equable—uniform; having the same rate; not unlike at different times.

8. ESTEEM—ESTIMATE.

We *esteem* a person when we think highly of him.

We *estimate* when we form a conjecture, or make a calculation as to any amount or value.

9. EXAMPLE—EXEMPLAR.

An *example* is any person or thing or incident that illustrates a rule or a remark. Sometimes it is used in the sense of *pattern*; but just as often in the sense of *instance* or *warning*.

An *exemplar* is a person held up as a pattern or model to be imitated.

10. EXPECT—SUSPECT.

We *expect* what is yet to come.

We *suspect* what lies hidden, or what we may not yet have evidence to prove.

11. FACTIOUS—FACTITIOUS.

Factious—quarrelsome; apt to break up into parties; prone to differ.

Factitious—artificial; not natural; made up for a purpose.

12. FALSITY—FALSENESS—FALSEHOOD.

Falsity—the want of truth in a proposition, or of soundness in an argument.

Falsehood—may be applied to propositions, but is generally applied to character, and personal qualities.

Falsehood—an untrue assertion.

13. FRUITION—FRUITAGE.

Fruition—enjoyment, pleasure.

Fruitage—the total amount of fruit borne by a tree, or the state of having fruit.

14. GENERAL—GENERIC.

General—common; pertaining to a large number of persons or things.

Generic—pertaining to a class, and coëxtensive with the class, whether large or small.

SENTENCES TO BE CRITICISED.

Who the author of the piece was, was never named throughout the whole critic.

I hate to receive the declension of such a competent man.

I found the inscription all defaced from my father's tomb; but I was mighty proud that the fence was still standing.

This house has stood for a long durance, but it never was imminent for its beauty.

There is a great sight of emigrants coming into this country this spring; some persons esteem them at four thousand in all.

Benjamin Franklin did not say that three removes are equal to a fire, but that three removes are as good as a fire. I allow he meant as good at causing loss and disaster.

The motion of col. Jones' buggy is not so equal as the motion of yours: it does not begin to be so pleasant to ride in.

I estimate our old pastor very highly; he is all sorts of a guide to mourners.

If I catch that rascal, I'll make an exemplar of him. I expect he is an experienced villain.

The English press is forever trying to get up a factious sentiment against France, by demeaning her great men.

The falsehood of his arguments was soon made to appear; but he never let on that he saw it.

There is about six weeks from the time of blossoming to the time of full fruition.

Having hands where we have feet, is the general quality that distinguishes monkeys from men.

LESSON XXX.

LIST OF PARONYMS LIABLE TO BE CONFOUNDED.

No. III.

1. GENTILITY—GENTLENESS.

Gentility—the quality of being genteel.

Gentleness—the quality of being gentle.

2. GRACEFUL—GRACIOUS.

Graceful—having a pleasing shape or motion.

Gracious—kind, condescending, favorable.

3. GRADATION—GRADUATION.

Gradation—the act of making into steps or degrees; a scale of degrees.

Graduation—the act of taking a degree.

4. HUMAN—HUMANE.

Human—belonging to man; having the properties of man.

Humane—benevolent, kind, merciful.

5. HUMILITY—HUMILIATION.

Humility—the state or quality of being humble—of thinking lowly of one's self.

Humiliation—the act of bringing low; of reducing from prosperity or honor to a low condition.

6. IMPERIAL—IMPERIOUS.

Imperial—pertaining to an emperor or an empire.

Imperious—haughty, dictatorial.

7. INFINITE—INDEFINITE.

Infinite—beyond all bounds.

Indefinite—not specified, not precisely measured or defined.

8. INGENIOUS—INGENUOUS.

Ingenious—inventive, fertile in contrivances.

Ingenuous—candid, open, frank.

9. INTERMITTENT—REMITTENT.

A fever is *intermittent* when one paroxysm passes completely off, before another comes on. It is called *remittent* when a second paroxysm comes on before the preceding has gone off.

10. JUDICIAL—JUDICIOUS.

Judicial—pertaining to a judge or a court of law.

Judicious—with good judgment, prudent.

11. JUROR—JURIST.

Juror—one of the men who compose a *jury*, which is a committee of men appointed to judge a case.

Jurist—one who is learned in the law, or occupying an official position as judge.

12. LABORIOUS—ELABORATE.

Laborious—prone to labor; expending labor on some work.

Elaborate—that on which much labor (literary or artistic) has been expended.

13. LEGATE—LEGATEE.

Legate—an ambassador, an agent.

Legatee—one who receives a legacy.

14. LITERAL—LITERARY.

Literal—not figurative; used in the plain and primary sense of the words.

Literary—pertaining to literature or learning; given to learned pursuits.

SENTENCES TO BE CRITICISED.

The ingenuous physician invented an instrument to measure the difference in temperature between the fever and the chill of a remittent fever.

The judge gave it as his judicious opinion that it was a trespass for a man to carry his horse to drink of a spring on another man's land; no matter how ill-convenient his own horse-lot was to a watering place.

By the gentility of the tones of his voice, I knew that he was a human man; so I told him all about the misery in my back.

She puts up her hair more graciously than any person I know. I think she is powerful pretty, but I expect she is a little imperial to those about her.

On the day of his gradation he met with a great humility, from the exposure of the fact that his speech was not original. He had taken indefinite pains to conceal it, but the truth came out.

Eleven of the jurists were for giving half the land to each legate; but the remaining one insisted on taking the literary sense of the will; and he was so persistent that the jury could not come to a verdict.

LESSON XXXI.

With the help of the following questions write a composition on

FLOWERS.

1. Do flowers grow on herbs or shrubs or trees?
2. Do they generally grow at the top of the plant, or on the sides?
3. At what time of the year are they most numerous?
4. Which color is most common in flowers?
5. What are the bright colored leaves of a flower called?
6. Did you ever see a flower without these pretty colored leaves?
7. What parts of the flower are those that give out yellow powder?
8. Do you know what the yellow powder is called, and what is the use of it?
9. Why are wild forest-flowers generally more delicate than garden flowers?
10. How do you feel when you see beautiful flowers?
11. Mention some occasions when it is most appropriate and pleasing to adorn with flowers.
12. How can flowers help to remind us of God?
13. What other lessons can you draw from flowers?

NOTE TO THE TEACHER.—The teacher may prefer to give his own help to the pupils for the writing out of any composition. If so, he can write out a set of questions on the blackboard in full view of all the class, and require the class to write the composition in his presence, with the help thus afforded. This is sometimes necessary in order to secure originality.

Another method is for the teacher to prepare himself, by a little forethought, so as to select the best points, and deliver a short lecture to the class on the subject assigned. The lecture should not exceed fifteen minutes in length; much less than that at first. It should be expressed in the simplest language, and

delivered deliberately and in conversational style. This plan is peculiarly appropriate with such subjects as involve some scientific knowledge to treat them understandingly; such as *Leaves, Seeds, Rain, Snow, Frost, Mosquitoes, Corn, Wheat, Cotton*, etc.

Sometimes the teacher may select some single country for the topic, and after delivering a short lecture upon it, require the substance of the lecture reproduced in the composition.

LESSON XXXII.

LIST OF PARONYMS LIABLE TO BE CONFOUNDED.

No. IV.

1. LOCALITY—LOCATION.

Locality—the district in which any object is to be found.

Location—the act of placing any thing, or of determining its place.

2. LUXURIANT—LUXURIOUS.

Luxuriant—applied to plants, means flourishing, growing in abundance.

Luxurious—applied to persons, means *prone to indulge in luxury*; applied to things, means *affording enjoyment*.

3. MECHANICS—MECHANISM.

Mechanics—the science or principles of machinery.

Mechanism—the plan on which any machine is constructed.

4. MODIFY—MODULATE.

Modify—to change in some respects; not confined in its application.

Modulate—applied only to musical sounds and the human voice: to change the key.

5. MYSTICAL—MYSTERIOUS.

Mystical—having a secret meaning; allegorical, emblematical.

Mysterious—only partly understood; hard to comprehend.

6. NATION—NATIONALITY.

Nation—a people of common origin, under one government.

Nationality—the quality or property of being a nation, or of belonging to a particular nation.

7. NUTRIMENT—NUTRITION.

Nutriment—that which nourishes.

Nutrition—the act of nourishing.

8. OBSERVANCE—OBSERVATION.

Observance—the act of paying regard to;—applied to laws, customs, and ceremonies.

Observation—the act of noticing any thing; a remark made on any subject.

9. PENANCE—PENITENCE.

Penance—an act imposed on a penitent, to give expression to his repentance.

Penitence—the feeling of one who repents.

10. PERSONIFY—PERSONATE.

Personify—to invest in imagination with the attributes of a person.

Personate—to represent, to act in the character of another.

11. PHYSICIAN—PHYSICIST.

Physician—one who practices the art of medicine.

Physicist—one who investigates the facts and laws of nature.

12. PICTORIAL—PICTURESQUE.

Pictorial—having the nature of a picture, or adorned with pictures.

Picturesque—what would look well in a picture.

13. PIETY—PIETISM.

Piety—reverence and affection for God.

Pietism—that kind of religion which inclines to excessive cultivation of piety, at the expense of philanthropy.

14. POLITIC—POLITICAL.

Politic—prudent; consulting expediency.

Political—having reference to affairs of government.

15. POLICY—POLITY.

Policy—the course marked out by expediency, or adopted as the best.

Polity—the form of civil government possessed by a country or nation.

16. POPULATION—POPULACE.

Population is a general term, applied to *all* the people in a country, district, or city.

Populace is applied only to cities, and signifies the lower classes of the inhabitants.

SENTENCES TO BE CRITICISED.

I never could understand the mechanics of a watch; it is all mystical to me.

Luxurious shrubbery embowers the entire location.

Can you not modulate your demands on poor major Dottery? I think it would be political in you to do so.

There is more nutrition in an egg than in a turnip; at least for the humane system.

The whole populace of the valley are very strict in the observation of the church festivals.

I do not think him very learned as a physician, but long experience has given him great skill in curing the diseases of this location.

It is much easier to give penitence than to be really sorry for having done wrong, so sorry as not to repeat the wrong.

That old mill peering from between the willows, has a very pictorial appearance; has it not. And what a luxurious elm overshadows it?

The policy of that nationality was the growth of the experience of centuries. Such constitutions are not to be made by congresses and committees.

Thy penitence will do thee no good, unless it costs thee something. Let thy patient sufferings water the roots of thy humiliation. Learn by the absence of luxuriant diet, and even by the suspension of all nutriment, to gain the mastery over thy body. Give thy time to meditations of pietism.

Is there no mysterious meaning hidden behind this curious monogram?

LESSON XXXIII.

LIST OF PARONYMS LIABLE TO BE CONFOUNDED.

No. V.

1. PRINCIPLE—PRINCIPAL.

Principle is always a noun; it means an elementary or foundation truth.

Principal is primarily an adjective, signifying *chief, belonging to the head, most important*, etc. Used as a noun it signifies *the leading officer, the head man*, etc.

2. RADICAL—RADICLE.

Radical—as an adjective, means belonging to the root, or having the nature of a root. As a noun, *Radical* means either one who advocates a thorough reform, or the part of a word to which the prefixes and affixes are applied to form a derivative.

Radicle—means a *little root*.

3. RHYME—RHYTHM.

Rhyme—correspondence in sound occurring at the end of two or more words or lines of poetry.

Rhythm—regularity in the recurrence of accent, in continuous discourse.

4. ROMAN—ROMISH.

Roman—belonging to the people, city, or ancient empire of Rome.

Romish—belonging to the church of Rome.

5. SANCTION—SANCTIFY.

Sanction—to confirm, to ratify, to give force to.

Sanctify—to make holy, to set apart for holy uses, to consecrate.

6. SANGUINE—SANGUINARY.

Sanguine—hopeful, ardent.

Sanguinary—bloody.

7. SCHOLAR—SCHOOLMAN.

Scholar—one who attends school; one who learns; one who is learned.

Schoolman—one of the philosophic divines of the Middle Ages, trained in the schools of Charlemagne.

8. SCRIP—SCRIPT.

Scrip—certificate of stock.

Script—letters formed as in writing.

9. SENSUAL—SENSUOUS.

Sensual—applied to objects, means affording gratification through the senses. Applied to persons, it means prone to seek pleasure in the senses and appetites.

Sensuous is applied to objects or ideas that we know through the senses, either directly or indirectly.

10. SOCIAL—SOCIABLE.

Sociable is a word of very limited application. It is applied only to persons, and means fond of society, affable.

Social is a word of extensive application, and means pertaining to society, having the nature of a society, disposed to society.

11. SPECIAL—SPECIOUS.

Special—belonging to one particular thing or kind of things; unlike other things of the same general kind.

Specious—apparently right or just.

12. SPIRITUAL—SPIRITUOUS.

Spiritual—pertaining to, or having the nature of, an incorporeal, intelligent being.

Spirituuous—containing alcohol.

13. STATUE—STATUTE.

Statue—an image of a human being.

Statute—a law enacted by the legislature.

14. SUMPTUARY—SUMPTUOUS.

Sumptuary—having reference to expense, or style of living.

Sumptuous—elegant, costly, luxurious.

15. TEMPERATURE—TEMPERAMENT.

Temperature—the degree of heat in any object.

Temperament—the natural disposition of any person; the kind of constitution he possesses.

16. TEMPORAL—TEMPORARY.

Temporal—pertaining to time, in contradistinction from eternity.

Temporary—enduring but a short while.

17. THEOREM—THEORY.

Theorem—a proposition to be proved; a rule expressed by formulas; a pattern used in drawing or painting.

Theory—a supposition to account for a large class of facts.

18. TRAVEL—TRAVAIL.

Travel—to pass from place to place for business or pleasure.

Travail—to undergo severe labor.

SENTENCES TO BE CRITICISED.

He seems to be familiar with the details of the art of surveying, but the principals of the science he never studied.

Do you think there will soon be a radicle reform in the Roman church?

If you have too many syllables in the line you will break the rhyme?

Will the ambassador sanctify the agreement made by his secretary yesterday?

Your Brother George is so sanguinary! He sees no possibility of failure in this plan.

Your uncle is one of the most learned schoolmen of this country. He has made Grecian antiquities his specious study, I believe.

He can transcribe a piece in Romish letters almost as fast as one of us can in script.

The conceptions of the fancy are all sensual, although they are unreal.

Government is the result of the sociable instincts of man; religion, the expression of his spirituous instincts.

A half a dozen statutes have been enacted against this kind of fraud, but it still survives.

The fact is that sumptuous laws are always productive of more Evil than Good.

The temperament of ice-water is too low to be healthy as a common drink.

There are signs that the temporary power of the pope will soon come to an end.

The theorem that Sir Isaac Newton invented to account for the polarization of light seems very uncouth to our Professor of Physics.

If we ever get to the point of perfect resignation to the Divine will, it must be by the utmost travel of soul.

Without I see that his ambition is roused, in which case all remonstrance would be thrown away on him, I allow to talk to him very plainly.

The poor girl said she did not feel like singing, as she had been sort o' poorly for better than a week.

I will spoil out all I have written: the verbiage is too low.

LESSON XXXIV.

QUESTIONS FOR REVIEW. No. I.

What is discourse? Why is not a conversation classed as *continuous* discourse?

What is a hyphen? What is the difference between the form of a hyphen and the form of a dash?

What is the difference in form between an interrogation point and the letter *s*?

Which are the full stops? What is the difference between prose and poetry as to the use of capitals?

What kinds of words (parts of speech) are always written with a capital initial? If one sentence forms part of another, what is the rule by which you know whether to begin it with a capital or not?

Repeat all the nine rules for the use of capitals.

What is didactic discourse?

What are quotation marks? When are they not double, but single at the beginning and end of a quotation?

What is meant by one word being *derived* from another? What is the distinction between a *derivative* and a *primitive* word? What is the *radical* part of a derivative, and what are the other part or parts called?

What is inflection? Which are the seven inflectional suffixes in English? What is the use of each of them?

When is the suffix *s* changed into *es*? What change is made when a suffix beginning with a vowel is added to a radical ending with silent *e*?

What is the rule about the spelling of a radical ending with a consonant, when a suffix is added beginning with a vowel?

What is the rule about the spelling of a radical ending in *y*, when a suffix is added that begins with a vowel? What change takes place when the suffix *ing* is to be added to a radical ending in *ie*?

What is meant by the style of a person? What are the two elements of style? To what does each refer?

Which are the five properties of good diction? To what does *propriety* of style refer? When is a person's style said to be proper?

Why are improprieties so often made in the use of prepositions?

What is the distinction between *between* and *among*? Between *by* and *with*? Between *to*, *in*, and *into*?

What are paronyms? Why are they liable to be used with impropriety?

LESSON XXXV.

PURITY OF DICTION—PROVINCIALISMS.

PUPIL. When is the diction of a writer said to be pure?

TEACHER. When he uses no word that does not belong to our language as it is now used by all reputable writers and speakers.

PUPIL. What do you mean by *reputable* writers and speakers?

TEACHER. Those who have some reputation as such; who have been well educated, and are supposed to be free from gross faults of style. The stock of words which such persons use is the standard of good English. To introduce any word into a discourse which does not belong to this stock is to commit the fault called *Barbarism*.

PUPIL. But why should any person want to use a word that does not belong to the language?

TEACHER. One cause of its being done is ignorance. Unless a person had some general acquaintance with our standard literature, he might not know that a particular word in common use among the people of his section of the country, was used nowhere else, and would not be understood by English-speaking people in other sections or other countries. Of course such a person would be liable to use a word thus limited in its circulation. Such a word is called a *Provincialism*.

PUPIL. In what countries is the English language spoken?

TEACHER. In England, and with some limited exceptions, through all the British isles, and in all countries in other parts of the world settled by the English, or subject to their government. Of course it is not the vernacular* of those countries where the English are

* The vernacular language of a people is the language they use in their own homes; their mother tongue.

found only in colonies. In each section of these widely-extended regions, some words come into conversational use that are never heard in other parts. It is the sectional or provincial usage that condemns them as *barbarisms*: they do not belong to the whole language, and should not be used in any discourse that is intended to be read by the English-speaking public.

I will now give you a list of such Provincialisms as are most likely to be heard and imitated by you, that you may avoid them hereafter.

LIST OF PROVINCIALISMS,

OR WORDS OF SECTIONAL USAGE.

Ambeer— <i>tobacco-spit</i> .	Fuddle— <i>intoxicate</i> .
Anan?— <i>what?</i>	Gallivant— <i>gallant</i> (verb).
Bender— <i>drunken frolic</i> .	Gorm— <i>daub, besmear</i> .
Bogus— <i>spurious</i> .	Hait—a <i>little bit</i> .
Boss— <i>head-workman, master</i> .	Hippen— <i>diaper</i> .
Bugger (pronounced boog ger)— <i>louse, supernatural monster</i> .	Highfalutin— <i>bombastic, grandiloquent, high-flown</i> .
Buncombe— <i>political effect, such as demagogues seek</i> .	Hobble— <i>difficulty</i> .
Bust— <i>drunken frolic</i> .	Hugger-mugger—a <i>person secretly mean or vicious</i> .
Buster—a <i>huge one</i> .	Hunkers— <i>haunches</i> .
Cahoot— <i>copartnership</i> .	Infare— <i>bridal reception at the bridegroom's home</i> .
Cantankerous— <i>contentious—irascible</i> .	Kerslosh— <i>splash, souse</i> .
Cavort— <i>prance</i> .	Maumuck, or mommuck— <i>man-gle</i> .
Chores— <i>little jobs of daily work</i> .	Peert (corruption of pert)— <i>quick, lively</i> .
Chunky— <i>like a chunk—short and thickset</i> .	Pesky— <i>troublesome, provoking</i> .
Contraption— <i>contrivance</i> .	Pickaninny—a <i>negro child</i> .
Darkey— <i>negro</i> .	Piney-woods— <i>pine-woods</i> .
Dodger—a <i>cake of boiled dough</i> .	Pone—a <i>loaf</i> .
Faize— <i>graze, scratch</i> .	Potter—to <i>trifle or delay</i> .
Fice, or fise—a <i>little dog, a whiffet</i> .	Primp— <i>make prim, to arrange one's person for appearance in public</i> .
Flit— <i>remove, move away</i> .	
Fornenst— <i>opposite, over against</i> .	
Fouty— <i>contemptible</i> .	

Rambunctious—*headlong, rough, violent.*

Rile—*irritate.*

Rippet—*disturbance, disorderly noise.*

Ruck—*rumple.*

Saddy (pronounced *sâ-âdy*)—*a courtesy.*

Shote—a *half-grown pig.*

Shackly or shackling—*loose, crazy.*

Skedaddle—*retreat in disorder.*

Slewed—*much intoxicated.*

Spurge—a *dashing appearance.*

Tote—to *carry.*

Tah-tah—*thank you* (a baby word).

Trampoosse—*saunter, ramble.*

Whopper—a *huge one.*

SENTENCES TO BE CRITICISED.

He uses such highfalutin language that a common human like me can not understand him.

Here comes a darkey with his clothes all gormed with gum turpentine, and two little pickaninnies limping after him: I reckon they are from the piney-woods.

The rude fellow set with his heels against the jamb, and spurting ambeer all around him, until there was not a hait of dry, clean floor on that side of the room.

All this talk of going to law about the matter is for buncombe; he does not allow to do any such thing as that.

These stamps are bogus; the boss must have known it when he sat them aside from the others.

Every time she looks into a dark room she thinks she sees a bugger in it, and skedaddles from the place in great alarm.

The speaker was as nervous as a little fice, and jabbered and cavorted at a dreadful rate; but it was all for buncombe; the man had no real patriotism or statesmanship.

Right fornenst me set a buster of a fellow, fishing the dodgers out of a pot-pie before him. Every now and then one would slip off his fork, and fall kerslosh in the greasy pie, scattering the gravy all round.

Wait until I get through with my chores, and we will go on a bender.

The girls took so long to primp that I got tired, and trampoosed to the gin-house, to see the new contraptions there.

Here my lad! can you tote this shote into that pen, and be right peert about it. That's a man.

LESSON XXXVI.

THE USE OF FOREIGN EXPRESSIONS.

PUPIL. You have explained how a person may, through ignorance, violate purity of style, by introducing a word of provincial usage. In what other way can a barbarism be perpetrated?

TEACHER. Have you never heard a person use a French word, when he might just as well have expressed himself in plain English?

PUPIL. Yes, often.

TEACHER. Well, that was a violation of purity. His diction was not purely English, and he was prompted to to use the French expression probably by a little vanity, a desire to show off his learning.

PUPIL. Do you think that persons who use a French phrase every now and then, are all vain and affected?

TEACHER. Not in every case. Some French phrases express what the English language has no terms to express exactly. Of course, in such cases, there is no help for it; the French term must be used. But the rule is, *Never, in English discourse, use a word or phrase from any other language, if there is any word or words in English that will express the idea as well.*

PUPIL. Is French the only language that is liable thus to be used to the detriment of the English?

TEACHER. By no means. Some persons have the habit of using Latin and Greek phrases, in the same way. Many of the classical phrases, however, that are oftenest used in English, are technical terms, and their use could not well be avoided.

With these instructions you must judge for yourself in each particular instance, whether the use of a foreign expression is justifiable or not.

SENTENCES TO BE CRITICISED.*

All the élèves of that école have a penchant for the beaux arts.

The emperor seems to have embonpoint, but I do not like the hauteur of his manner.

The château of the senator was soon surrounded by the canaille, but he went forth, and spoke to them in a very brusque manner.

The entire beau monde has been for a week on the qui vive to hear the dénouement of the matter.

The young man exhibited quite a jeu d'esprit; but under the circumstances, it was condemned as mal à propos.

Just as he was about to cut off the tough wing with a coup de maître of his knife, the goose slipped from under his fork out of the plate, and landed in the lap of a lady just opposite. "Madam," said he with the utmost sang-froid, "I will thank you for that goose."

Her dress is very outré, and there is always something bizarre about her head. Moreover her bijoux are too glaring for ordinary occasions.

There I met my ci-devant Governess, who with a great deal of empressment, bade me welcome to the fête champêtre.

Now this bon vivant thought he could spend money ad libitum; but the upshot of his course was Imprisonment for Debt.

* For the meaning of the foreign words and phrases introduced in these sentences, see the following:

FOREIGN WORDS AND PHRASES.

ABBREVIATIONS.—L. *Latin*; F. *French*; S. *Spanish*; I. *Italian*.

Ab initio, L.—From the beginning.	Alibi, L.—Elsewhere; absent from the scene.
Ad captandum, L.—To attract or please.	Alma mater, L.—A benign mother; one's own college or university.
Ad rem, L.—To the point.	Anno mundi, L.—In the year of the world.
À la mode, F.—According to the fashion.	Anglice, L.—In English.
Ad libitum, L.—At pleasure.	A propos, F.—To the purpose, suitable.
Ad valorem, L.—According to the value.	Au fait, F.—Skillful, expert.
Agréments, F.—Embellishments, charms.	Beau monde, F.—The fashionable world.
Alias, L.—Otherwise.	

Beaux arts, F.—The fine arts.
 Belles lettres, F.—Fine or polite literature; literature intended to please.
 Bijou (*plu.* bijoux), F.—A jewel.
 Billet doux, F.—A love-letter.
 Bizarre, F.—Fantastic.
 Bon jour, F.—Good day.
 Bon mot, F.—A witty remark.
 Bon ton, F.—The height of fashion.
 Bon vivant, F.—A good liver, a jolly companion.
 Bona fide, L.—In good faith, real, true.
 Boudoir, F.—A small room.
 Canaille, F.—Rabble.
 Capias, L.—An order to seize.
 Casus belli, L.—An occasion for war.
 Château, F.—Castle, country-seat.
 Chef d'œuvre, F.—A masterpiece.
 Ci-devant, F.—Former.
 Cicerone, I.—A guide showing works of art.
 Clique, F.—A party.
 Comme il faut, F.—As it ought to be.
 Compos mentis, L.—Of sound mind.
 Con amore, L.—With love or zest.
 Connoisseur, F.—A skillful judge of works of art.
 Cortège, F.—An escort.
 Cornucopia, L.—Horn of plenty.
 Coup de grâce, F.—The finishing blow.
 Coup de main, F.—A taking by surprise.

Coup de maître, F.—A master-stroke.
 Coup d'œil, F.—A glance of the eye; a hasty view.
 Débris, F.—Broken remnants.
 Dénouement, F.—The issue of an affair.
 De facto, L.—From the fact.
 Dei gratia, L.—By the grace of God.
 De novo, L.—Anew.
 Devoirs, F.—Duties, acts of civility.
 Double entendre, F.—Double meaning; indecent allusion.
 Dramatis personæ, L.—Persons of the drama.
 Éclaircissement, F.—A clearing up, or explanation.
 Éclat, F.—Splendor, applause.
 École, F.—School.
 Élève, F.—Pupil.
 Élite, F.—Choice, select society.
 Embonpoint, F.—Corpulence, stoutness.
 Empressement, F.—Zeal, earnestness.
 Encore, F.—Again; a word used to call for a repetition.
 En masse, F.—In a mass.
 Ennui, F.—Weariness.
 Entrée, F.—Entrance.
 Entre nous, F.—Between us; confidentially.
 Entrepôt, F.—Depot for goods.
 E pluribus unum, L.—One formed of many. The motto of the United States.
 Ergo, L.—Therefore.
 Esprit de corps, F.—The spirit of a body of men.

Et cætera, L.—And so forth.

Exit, L.—Departure.

Exeunt omnes, L.—All go out.

Exempli gratia, L.—For the sake of example.

Ex cathedra, L.—From the chair, authoritatively.

Ex curia, L.—Out of court.

Ex officio, L.—By virtue of office.

Ex parte, L.—On one side; on the part of.

Exposé, F.—A laying open; a formal statement of reasons, facts, etc.

Ex tempore, L.—Unpremeditated.

Fac simile, L.—An exact copy.

Fête champêtre, F.—A rural festival.

Felo de se, L.—Self-murder.

Fiat, L.—A command.

Finale, I.—The concluding piece in music; the close.

Gens d'armes, F.—Armed guards of the police.

Habeas corpus, L.—A writ for delivering a person from imprisonment.

Hauteur, F.—Haughtiness, pride.

Hic jacet, L.—Here lies.

Hors de combat, F.—Disabled; out of condition to fight.

Ibidem, L.—In the same place.

Idem, L.—The same.

Id est, L.—That is.

Impromptu, L.—On the spur of the moment.

Imprimis, L.—In the first place.

Improvisatore, I.—One who composes and recites impromptu poetry.

In extenso, L.—In full.

In medias res, L.—Into the midst of affairs.

In perpetuum, L.—Forever.

In petto, I.—In reserve or secrecy.

In propria persona, L.—In person.

In statu quo, L.—In its former state.

In toto, L.—Wholly, entirely.

In transitu, L.—On the passage.

Incognito, L.—In disguise.

Instanter, L.—Quickly, earnestly.

Ipse dixit, L.—He himself has said it; mere assertion.

Ipso facto, L.—By the act itself.

Ipso jure, L.—By the law itself.

Item, L.—Likewise, also.

Jeu d'esprit, F.—Play of wit.

Jet d'eau, F.—Play of water; an ornamental fountain.

Labor omnia vincit, L.—Labor conquers every thing.

Lapsus linguæ, L.—A slip of the tongue.

Laus Deo, L.—Praise to God.

Lex talionis, L.—The law of retaliation.

Licet, L.—It is allowed.

Mademoiselle, F.—A young unmarried Miss.

Magna charta, L.—The great charter.

Mal à propos, F.—Out of place, inappropriate.

Messieurs, F.—Gentlemen; sirs.

Meum et tuum, L.—Mine and thine.

Modus operandi, L.—The mode of operation.

Monsieur, F.—Sir; Mr.

Multum in parvo, L.—Much in a little.

Naiveté, F.—Simplicity, ingenuousness.

Ne plus ultra, L.—The farthest limit or point; perfection.

Nolens volens, L.—Willing or unwilling.

Nom de guerre, F. } an assumed
Nom de plume, F. } name.

Nota bene, L.—Mark well.

Omnibus, L.—For all.

On dit, F.—People say.

Ora pro nobis, L.—Pray for us.

Outré, F.—Exaggerated.

Peccavi, L.—I have sinned.

Penchant, F.—Inclination.

Pinxit, L.—He or she painted it.

Plateau, F.—Table-land.

Porte-monnaie, F.—A flat money purse.

Posse comitatus, L.—The power of the county; an armed body.

Post meridiem, L.—Afternoon.

Post mortem, L.—After death.

Prima facie, L.—From the first view; self-evident.

Pro bono publico, L.—For the public good.

Pro et con., *i. e.*, pro et contra, L.—For and against.

Pro tempore, L.—For the time.

Quantum libet, L.—As much as you please.

Quid pro quo, L.—Something for something, tit for tat.

Qui vive, F.—Alert, wide-awake.

Quo warranto, L.—By what authority.

Rara avis, L.—A rare bird; a prodigy.

Ragoût, F.—Stewed meat.

Réveillé, F.—A drum-beat signal to arise.

Sans, F.—Without.

Sang-froid, F.—Cold-bloodedness, want of feeling.

Sculpsit, L.—He or she engraved it.

Sic semper tyrannis, L.—So may it always be with tyrants.

Sine die, L.—Without appointing a day.

Sine qua non, L.—Indispensable condition.

Sobriquet, F.—Nickname.

Soirée, F.—Evening party.

Sub rosa, L.—Under the rose; privately.

Summum bonum, L.—The chief good.

Tableau, F.—A picture.

Tapis, F.—A carpet.

Terra firma, L.—Firm earth.

Tête-à-tête, F.—Head to head; a private conversation.

Toupet, F.—An artificial lock of hair; a curl.

Tout ensemble, F.—The whole taken together.

Vade mecum, L.—Go with me; a constant companion.

Valet de chambre, F.—A footman.

Verbatim et literatim, L.—Word for word and letter for letter.

Via, L.—By way of.

Vice versa, L.—The opposite way.

Vis-à-vis, F.—Opposite.

Viva voce, L.—By the living voice.

Vox populi, vox Dei, L.—The voice of the people is the voice of God.

LESSON XXXVII.

OBSOLETE WORDS.

PUPIL. You have explained how a writer may violate purity by the introduction of words of partial usage, and also by the needless use of foreign words: are there any other modes of violating purity?

TEACHER. Yes, there are two; in a manner the opposites of each other. One consists in using *obsolete* words, and the other in trying to bring unnecessary *new* words into use.

PUPIL. What is an *obsolete* word?

TEACHER. A word that was formerly in good use as a pure English word, but is now no longer used by the best writers and speakers.

PUPIL. Do words ever pass out of use?

TEACHER. Oh, yes. There is a "*fashion*" in words, as in dress and dwellings, etc. Language does not change quite so rapidly as the modes of dress and customs of society; yet it does undergo change. Some words are passing out of use, others are coming into use, all the time. Some seem to be laid aside for a while, and then are brought back into vogue, just as some styles in dress are revived after long disuse.

PUPIL. If a word has passed out of use, why should a writer be induced to employ it? How would he ever think of it?

TEACHER. This is from vanity, again, I presume. Some persons have a great fancy for reading old authors. They become fond of the old modes of expression; and either because they think these better than the modern, or because they have a little pride in being able to use words that common people can not use, they attempt to restore obsolete words.

PUPIL. Well, what if they do? Is it always wrong to use a word that has become obsolete? How else could it happen that some words after being obsolete a while, should be restored to common usage?

TEACHER. If a *great* man, a popular writer or speaker revives an obsolete word in his own discourse, the public may accept it, and instead of condemning him, imitate him in the use of it. If so, then the word is revived, and the great man is praised for adding to the richness of the language. But if any person who is not great or popular should attempt such a thing, he would be condemned and laughed at. So beware how *you* attempt to go against the present fashion in the use of words.

PUPIL. Favor me with a list of the words that are obsolete.

TEACHER. To enumerate all the obsolete words of the English language would occupy several pages unnecessarily. I will here give you a list of those which you may sometimes meet with in modern writings, and which, therefore, you might chance to use.

LIST OF OBSOLETE WORDS.

Agog—*eager, excited.*
 Bedight—*bedecked.*
 Bedizen—*deck, adorn.*
 Belike—*probably.*
 Bewray—*betray.*
 Companiable—*affable, agreeable.*
 Digne—*worthy.*
 Dissimuler—*dissembler.*
 Eftsoons—*soon afterward.*
 Eke—*also.*
 Enow—*enough.*
 Ensamplē—*example.*
 Erst—*formerly.*
 Een or eyen—*eyes.*
 Fetise—*neat.*

Fro—*from.*
 Gage (verb)—*wager, pledge.*
 Greaten—*enlarge, grow.*
 Heft—*Handle or weight.*
 Hight—*named.*
 Holpen—*helped.*
 Irks—*wearies.*
 Let—*hinder, prevent.*
 Leasing—*deceit.*
 Methinks—I *think.*
 Nathless—*nevertheless.*
 Pate—*head.*
 Quoth—*saith or said.*
 Se'ennight—*week.*
 Sith—*since.*

Sooth—*truth.*

Thereat—at *which.*

Thrall—*slave or slavery.*

Trow—*believe, trust.*

Twain—*two.*

Troth—*truth, faith.*

Vavasour—*landlord.*

Ween—*imagine*

Wis—*think.*

Wight—*person.*

Wit—*know.*

Whilom—*some time since.*

Ycleped or cleped—*called.*

Ye—*you (objective).*

PUPIL. Why, some of these words are found in the Bible!

TEACHER. Yes; the Bible was translated into English about three hundred years ago. At that time, many of the words that are now obsolete were in good use; and of course, the translators did not depart from the prevailing usage.

PUPIL. But I find some of these obsolete words used by people that write poetry in our own time.

TEACHER. The requirements of purity with regard to prose diction are not all applicable to poetry. Poets are allowed to use any word that ever belonged to the language, provided they do not make their verses unintelligible.

SENTENCES TO BE CRITICISED.

All these digne men are ensamples to us, and nothing should let us from following them.

Anon this holy man wot the leasing of the fiend, and how he would havê withdrawn him fro well-doing.

Thou, haughty lord! thou shalt be bewrayed by thine own thralls.

Erst we had bread enow; but now, methinks, there's many a wight doth go to bed supperless.

Belike, quoth he, ye wit not my name, and therefore will not accost me civilly.

Richard the Third was a deep dissimuler, outwardly companiable where he inwardly hated.

His pate hath not been beholden to a comb for a se'ennight.

The vavasour is fuddled, I ween, when he goes a gallivanting to the tap-room maids.

In sooth the brightness of her twain eyen hath gleamed in all my dreams this night.

LESSON XXXVIII.

UNAUTHORIZED WORDS.

PUPIL. You said in the former lesson that it is a violation of purity to try to introduce a new word. How else can the fashion change with regard to words? You said that some words are dropping into disuse, and others coming into vogue.

TEACHER. I said it is a violation of purity to introduce a new word *unnecessarily*. But if a scientific man has discovered a new object, for which the language has no name, he may make a name for it.

PUPIL. What do you mean by finding a new object?

TEACHER. Discovering a new *kind* of thing, of course. If the substance or kind of thing has been known to some other nation or people, the name that they give to it is commonly the one we adopt. By this means a good many words have come into our language within the present century, and the list is constantly enlarging. Some of these words are *alpaca*, *coolie*, *gunny*, *gutta-percha*, *jute*, *meerschaum*, *sorghum*.

PUPIL. But does a person ever find any thing so new as not to be known to any body before?

TEACHER. Yes; chemists from time to time discover new elements, or new compounds; and they are of course entitled to give to each a name. Naturalists also discover new species of animals or plants; and though the names they give, have at first the form of Latin words, yet if, for any cause, any one of these new kinds of animals or plants comes to be much talked of, its scientific name becomes *anglicized*.

PUPIL. What do you mean by *anglicized*?

TEACHER. *Made English of*: adopted into the English language as a common English word.

All these that I have mentioned are sources of new words. And, furthermore, if any person, in the interest of philosophy or education, wishes to draw a new distinction among things that are old, he has the right at least to *propose* a new term for it.

Making a new word and proposing it for use is called *coining* a word. *Only discoverers and original thinkers have the right to coin a word.*

PUPIL. But when I find a new word used by an author, how am I to know whether or not I may use it too?

TEACHER. The safest rule is to wait and see if reputable writers generally accept and use it. If they do, you may follow. If not, you must avoid it.

Here is a list of words that have been at some time or other, used by some writer or writers, but which have not been accepted by the literary world in general.

REJECTED WORDS.

Acception—for <i>acceptation, the current meaning.</i>	Embracement—for <i>embrace.</i>
Acclivious— <i>sloping upward.</i>	Exploreate—to <i>explore.</i>
Adoremment— <i>adoration.</i>	Fashiondom—the <i>fashionable world.</i>
Affectuous— <i>pathetic.</i>	Finitude— <i>limitation.</i>
Amiableness— <i>amiability.</i>	Fleshen— <i>fatten.</i>
Aspection— <i>aspect.</i>	Horally— <i>hourly.</i>
Awakenment— <i>awakening.</i>	Hurrimment— <i>hurry.</i>
Candidness— <i>candor.</i>	Inconsumptible— <i>indestructible.</i>
Casuality— <i>casualty.</i>	Inexpected— <i>unexpected.</i>
Collaud—to <i>unite in praising.</i>	Influencive— <i>influential.</i>
Conject—to <i>guess.</i>	Latrociny— <i>robbery.</i>
Cruciate—to <i>torture.</i>	Norate—to <i>publish.</i>
Disremember—to <i>forget.</i>	Orate—to <i>speak, or harangue.</i>
Dispensate—to <i>grant a dispensation.</i>	Particulate—to <i>mention by name.</i>
Dissimule—to <i>dissemble.</i>	Pecunious— <i>pecuniary, or having money.</i>
Effectuate—to <i>accomplish.</i>	Philosophism— <i>sophistry.</i>
Enthuse—to <i>inspire.</i>	Populosity— <i>populousness.</i>
Eventuate— <i>result.</i>	Pravitude— <i>depravity.</i>

Productivity—*productiveness*.
 Quarrelous—*quarrelsome*.
 Quiritation—a *crying for help*.
 Reviction—*resuscitation*.
 Risky—*hazardous*.
 Sedation—a *calming*.
 Sejoin—*disjoin, separate*.

Squalidness—*squalor*.
 Unbeknown—*unknown*.
 Unctuation—*anointing*.
 Undull—to *clarify*.
 Unshunnable—*unavoidable*.
 Wonderment—*astonishment*.
 Wrathful—*wroth*.

SENTENCES TO BE CRITICISED.

His hurriment only eventuated in his spoiling the work.

By charring the ends of the timbers, we make them almost inconsumptible.

The crime of latrocinny has greatly increased in the island, since the war has reduced so many that used to be pecunious to a state of squalidness.

Let us all collaud the president for his embracement of an anti-partisan policy, and for his candidness toward office-seekers.

Gentlemen, this business is too risky; we can not disremember what failures have been made by those who have preceded us.

The pravitude of modern fashiondom is utterly without finitude.

It cruciates me to walk on ground that is even slightly acclivious.

His arguments are characterized by philosophism, and his style is sophomorical; how can such a preacher effectuate an awakenment among the people.

The unctuation of the spirit serves to undull the intellectual faculties on all questions concerning moral practice or religious feeling.

His aspection showed that he was wrathful.

All unbeknown to me, he had professed his embracement of the Roman faith, and practiced the adoremment of the virgin.

You would n't know me, I have fleshened up so much lately.

LESSON XXXIX.

ILL-FORMED WORDS.

TEACHER. You have learned that the use of a new word which good writers have not yet accepted, is a violation of purity; and you have seen that many words

apparently formed according to rule have been rejected, simply because they were not necessary. You must now learn something about new words that have been rejected because they were not formed aright.

The science that treats of the formation of words is called Philology. I do not propose to give any of the rules for forming words, or discuss the meaning and use of suffixes and prefixes; but I will give you a list of such words, and explain the reason why each word has been rejected from the vocabulary of good English words.

LIST OF WORDS

REJECTED BECAUSE ILL-FORMED.

1. COME-AT-ABLE—The suffix *able* is never joined to any verb with an adverbial appendage to it, such as *come-at*. The proper word is *accessible* or *attainable*.
2. GO-AHEAD-ITIVE is liable to similar objection.
3. RETIRACY—The suffix *cy* is added to verbs ending in *ate* or adjectives ending in *ant* or *ent*; it is not proper to add this suffix to such a verb as *retire*, especially when we have the noun *retirement*.
4. BIRTH-DOM—The suffix *dom* is generally added to nouns signifying persons, and never to abstract nouns, such as *birth*. All that *birth-dom* might mean is conveyed in the words, *birth-right* and *inheritance*.
5. RESIDENTER—The suffix *er* is placed after verbs to designate the agent of the action expressed by the verb. But there is no such verb as *resident*. The verb is *reside*, and the name for the agent is *resident*.
6. ANNOYFUL and DAREFUL—The suffix *ful* is placed after adjectives or nouns to signify *abounding* in what the adjective or noun signifies. It is not properly placed after the verbs *annoy* and *dare*, since *annoying* and *daring* are sufficiently expressive.
7. FUNERALIZE and JEOPARDIZE—The suffix *ize* is generally placed after nouns and adjectives to form verbs whose meaning is to *make like* or *convert into* that which the noun expresses. Hence to *funeralize* would properly mean to *make a funeral of*, as if a person should convert some ceremony of a different nature into a funeral. And *jeopardize* would mean, not merely to *place*

in danger, but to *convert into* danger what is not so. But the simple word *jeopard* means to place in danger: hence *jeopardize* is not needed. And *funeralize* has been coined to mean, very objectionably, to preach the funeral sermon of a person.

8. GONE-NESS and OUGHT-NESS—The suffix *ness* is added to adjectives to form the corresponding abstract noun. *Ought* is never used as an adjective. The proper word is *obligation*. *Gone* is sometimes used as an adjective, but then it qualifies the thing that *did go*; as, "The summer is gone." Those who coined *gone-ness*, used it to qualify the thing or place from which something else, or all things else had gone. The proper word is *emptiness*, or *exhaustion*.
9. PREVENTATIVE—The suffix *ive* is added to verbs and other words to make adjectives, signifying *tending to*, or *having the power to*, do what the verb signifies. Now, the verb is *prevent*, not *preventate*; and the corresponding adjective (often used as a noun) is *preventive*.
10. The following fourteen words are all formed as if from Latin roots, whereas there are no such words found in the Latin language:

ABSQUATULATE—to *remove one's residence*.

ARGIFY—to *argue*. *Arguere* is a Latin word, but not *arguifacere*.

BETWEENITY—indecision, suspense.

CIRCUMBENDIBUS—circuit or circuitous.

CONNEXITY—connectedness. No such word as *connexitas*.

HAPPIFY—to *beautify*, to *make happy*.

JOLLIFICATION—noisy festivity. No Latin root to the word *jolly*.

MELANCHOLIOUS—melancholy. The word is from the Greek, and *ous* is a Latin suffix.

MINIFY—to *make less*, to *diminish*. No such Latin word as *minifacere*.

NEEDCESSITY—necessity.

PLUMPTITUDE—plumpness.

POCKETUALLY—pecuniarily.

TRANSMOGRIFY—transform.

UNCONSCIONABLE—enormous, unjustifiable.

RESURRECTED—raised, resuscitated. As this word is creeping into use among those who are unskilled in etymology, it may be well to explain why it is wrong. The error arises from confounding the two verbs *rise* and *raise*. The Latin *resurgere* means to *rise again*, not to *raise again*. Hence no word formed

from its supine *resurrectum* can have a transitive sense. Therefore there can be no such passive participle as *resurrected*.

11. The four following words contain errors in derivation from the Greek, or in applying Greek suffixes to words that have no Greek root:

JUDGMATICAL—*judicious, with judgment.*

MOBOCRACY—the *rule of mobs, anarchy.*

NEGROPHILISM—*partiality for negroes.*

STRATEGETICAL—*strategic; as if the radical were strateges.*

SENTENCES TO BE CRITICISED.

The rev. mr. scott will funeralize the Wife of mr. strong on this day three weeks.

If the house is come-at-able at all, it is only by a circumbendibus.

The neighborhood is much less troubled with latrocinny since the spencers have absquatulated.

These incessant jollifications among the laboring class jeopardize the interests of the whole community.

Turn the other end of the telescope, and you will find that it minifies objects seen through it.

I dreamed that I was in my resurrected body, and had lost all connexity with the present world. I found that I was not so much transmogrified as I had expected.

Such prices as these are unconscionable; you must suppose that pocketually I am infinite, or that I am unable to make a judgmatical bargain.

That circumbendibus movement was strategetical; but it eventuated in no important advantage.

He was in a state of betweenity, whether to save the city from mobocracy by declaring martial law, or to allow the elections to proceed, and let negrophilism work its own cure.

It is very annoyful to have a flower sent to you for the sake of its emblem, when you do not know the "language of flowers," as they call it.

A good consciousness and the knowledge that he is loved by all who know him, would happify any man.

He is a middling clever man, but his sons are powerful bad boys.

I suspicion that the Roman priests have been operating at him; he seems shy of all his Protestant collegians in the office.

LESSON XL.

THE PROPRIETIES OF LETTER-WRITING.

THE FORM OF A LETTER.

WAY'S ACADEMY,
WOODBURN P. O., BIBB CO., GA., }
Nov. 15th, 1870.

My dear Charley:

I propose to give you, in this form, some plain directions as to the manner of arranging the matter of a letter, illustrating my directions by the very letter which I write.

The four parts of a letter are, first, the *date*; second, the *address*; third, the *body* of the letter; and fourth, the *subscription*. I have already passed the date and the address, and am now writing the body of this letter. As you see above, the date should come at the head of the first page of the letter, toward the right-hand side of the page. It may occupy one line, or two or three, according to the number of words that may be necessary to show where and when the letter is written. One thing that you must invariably insert in the date of a letter that is sent by mail, is the name of the nearest post-office. No matter what fanciful name may be given to the house or locality in which the letter is written, the post-office name must not be omitted.

As to the style of the address, that depends upon the relation that exists between the correspondents. To a near relative, or a very intimate friend, it is allowable to use such a familiar address as I have used in this letter. But to others, the address should consist of two parts; first, the name and title of the person, in full; and second, on the next line, the complimentary address, such as *Sir*, *Madam*, etc. To an utter stranger we would write *Sir* or *Madam*; to one with whom we have had some previous acquaintance, *Dear Madam*, or *My dear Sir*. If the letter is addressed to a firm, or any collection of persons, the complimentary address should be *Gentlemen* or *Ladies*.

Some persons prefer to write the name and title of the party addressed at the foot of the letter, toward the left-hand side of the page. This is a matter of taste, but it is not proper to insert the name and title in both places.

In writing the body of the letter, be careful to leave a margin of about an inch on the left-hand side, and not to write too close to the right-hand edge. In commencing a new paragraph, let the first word be placed at a distance of *two* inches from the margin.

The style of the subscription should correspond with the relation between the parties. To a relative, it is always proper to subscribe one's self, *Your affectionate son, daughter, brother, cousin, etc.*, as the case may be. To a dear friend, one may write, *Your sincere friend*, or *Truly yours*, etc. To a person whose age or social standing demands a more elaborate expression of respect, some such form as the following would be in good taste:

*I have the honor to be
Your most obedient servant.*

*Allow me to subscribe myself
Your obliged and obt. servant.*

*Most respectfully and truly,
Yours, &c.*

*With the best wishes for your welfare,
I am, truly yours, &c.*

Hoping that you will find these directions adequate to all the exigencies of your present correspondence,


I beg to be remembered as

Your affectionate teacher,

JAMES FERNLEY.

To Master Charles Thornton.

NOTE TO THE TEACHER.—Now let the pupil practice the writing of letters, addressed to any person whom the teacher may specify. Let him require the pupil to narrate in his letter any occurrence that he may recently have witnessed, or to relate the events of any specified day, whether it were distinguished by any thing unusual or not. Let the letters thus written be carefully revised, and unless the errors are few and insignificant, let him be required to make a second and correct copy, characterized by sufficient neatness and skill in chirography to be preserved.

 Let this exercise be repeated from week to week, until neatness, correctness, and some degree of skill in expression be attained by practice. In this long-continued practice, this book will be of but little use except for reference in the correction of errors, or in the search for synonyms to give variety to expression.

LESSON XLI.

CHASTITY OF DICTION.

TEACHER. Which are the essential properties of good diction?

PUPIL. Propriety, Purity, Chastity, Precision, and Euphony.

TEACHER. Do you know what chastity means?

PUPIL. Yes; freedom from vulgarity. Is that its meaning as applied to style?

TEACHER. Very nearly. In order for the diction of a writer to be chaste, he must abstain not only from such words as are *never* heard in decent society, but also from those improper expressions which are sometimes used among respectable people, to give, as they think, liveliness or piquancy to their style. Such expressions are called *vulgarisms*.

PUPIL. So then *vulgarism* is the violation of *chastity* of diction, just as *barbarism* is the violation of its *purity*. Will you be so good as to give me an example of *vulgarism*?

TEACHER. I think Miss Z—— was guilty of *vulgarism* the other day, when she remarked of a certain gentleman, that she did not think he was *the clean thing*; that he *made no bones* of telling a lie, whenever it would suit his purpose.

PUPIL. Why, such expressions are very common in conversation! Are they really vulgar? I know many respectable people who say such things.

TEACHER. You must not confound *vulgarism* with *vulgarity*. *Vulgarism* is a transgression of the laws of style; *vulgarity* is the transgression of the rules of decent society. There are very many decent and respectable people who, from ignorance or carelessness or drollery,

use expressions that are not, in the true sense of the word, *chaste* expressions, but who would abhor the utterance of any indecent word. You can not say that they are characterized by *vulgarity* in the least degree; but their language is often open to the charge of *vulgarism*.

PUPIL. But are people always to talk in precise and stiff language like a book?

TEACHER. Certainly not. In conversation and in letters to familiar friends, a much freer style is allowable than in books and public addresses. But even in conversation, it should be the aim of every one to avoid all undignified and slang expressions. There is a gradation in language in this respect, which I might represent thus:

1. The observance of the strictest chastity;
2. Indulgence in colloquialisms;
3. Indulgence in vulgarism;
4. The utterance of indecent words.

PUPIL. You have used two words that I do not understand: *colloquialisms* and *slang*. What do they mean?

TEACHER. A colloquialism is a free and easy expression, perfectly allowable in conversation, but seldom in books, in serious correspondence, or in public addresses.

A slang expression is a vulgarism peculiar to a certain trade, or profession, or class of men. It resembles a provincialism in the fact that it is not in universal use among English-speaking people; but a provincialism is not necessarily a vulgar expression. Slang is always vulgar; that is, it is always a violation of the rules of the best society to use it.

PUPIL. Colloquialisms seem to bear the same relation to perfectly chaste language, that a workman's working dress does to his Sunday clothes.

TEACHER. That is a very happy illustration. Let me now give you a list of prevailing vulgarisms, that you may learn to avoid them in your conversation and letters.

LIST OF VULGARISMS AND SLANG PHRASES.

(GENERALLY OBJECTIONABLE.)

- ACCORDING TO GUNTER—accurately done.
 ACCORDING TO HOYLE—according to acknowledged authority.
 ACKNOWLEDGE THE CORN—acknowledge defeat.
 ALL TO PIECES—utterly.
 ANY HOW YOU CAN FIX IT—positively, in any event.
 BACK DOWN—recant, retract.
 BACK OUT—decline, revoke.
 THE BEAT OF—any thing superior to.
 BARK UP THE WRONG TREE—act under a mistake.
 BLOW OUT AT—abuse, scold.
 BLUFF OFF—deter.
 BRICK—rake, dissolute fellow.
 BRICK IN THE HAT—drunk.
 BRASS } impudence,
 CHEEK } self-confidence.
 BRED IN THE BONE—natural, inherited.
 TO DO UP BROWN—to do to perfection.
 BULLY—Fine, capital, good.
 COME IT OVER—deceive, cheat, swindle.
 CAVE—give up.
 CHAWED—mortified.
 CHOKE OFF—make desist.
 NOT A CIRCUMSTANCE TO—not to be compared to.
 THE CLEAN THING—genuine, pure, upright.
 GET ONE'S DANDER UP—roused.
 DEADHEAD—non-paying, privileged.
- TO BE DEATH ON—to be master of, or to be destructive of, or opposed to.
 TO GO ONE'S DEATH FOR or ON—to sustain or uphold at all hazards.
 DRIVING AT—engaged in, proposing to do.
 IN FOR IT—committed to it.
 FIRE AWAY—begin.
 FIXED FACT—well established fact.
 FINGERS ITCHING—eager.
 FAST—reckless.
 FORK OVER—deliver, hand over, pay.
 DOG CHEAP—unusually cheap.
 CRACKED UP—boasted, reputed.
 FACE THE MUSIC—meet the question, or the responsibility.
 DRY UP—hush.
 GO THE WHOLE HOG—go through with, accomplish thoroughly.
 GIVE IT THE GO-BY—avoid, purposely ignore.
 GO TO THE DOGS—become worthless or outcast.
 THE GIFT OF THE GAB—natural fluency of speech.
 GIVE ONE FITS—punish severely, drive to desperation.
 GO IT BLIND—Take the risk.
 GO IT WITH A LOOSENESS—prosecute with reckless zeal.
 GONER—one lost, dead, or overcome.
 GOOD AS WHEAT—very good, just the thing.

GET THE HANG OF—learn to handle or use.

GREEN—inexperienced, raw.

GENT—gentleman, man.

HAVE A FINGER IN THE PIE—have a share in.

HAVE A SCREW LOOSE—be in some respect at fault.

ON ONE'S OWN HOOK—independently, on one's own account.

IN A HORN—ironically speaking.

DRAW IN ONE'S HORNS—cease to menace, retract.

SET UP A HULLA-BALLOO—begin to cry loudly.

OLD HOSS (for horse)—sir.

HANG FIRE—delay.

IN CLOVER—in pleasant circumstances.

JAPONICADOM—the fashionable class.

TO GIVE ONE JESSIE—to treat severely.

TO JEW—to beat down in price.

KEEL OVER—to die.

KEEP SHADY—say nothing.

KEEP A STIFF UPPER LIP—maintain one's composure, or one's resolution.

KNOCK UNDER—give up.

KNOW THE ROPES—understand the details of a business, or the position of things.

KICK—jilt.

LOAF—lounge.

LIKE BLAZES—violently.

LET HER SLIDE *or* RIP—let it proceed, do not interpose.

LEAN AS A MAY SHAD—very lean.

LET THE CAT OUT OF THE BAG—reveal the secret.

LIQUOR—to take a dram.

LITTLE END OF THE HORN—failure.

TO FIND A MARE'S NEST—to make a ridiculous and empty discovery.

THE MAIN CHANCE—the means of subsistence.

MUM'S THE WORD—keep silent.

MAKE NO BONES OF—find no difficulty in.

MAKE TRACKS—go or run.

MIDDLING—tolerably.

A NOBODY—an obscure person.

NIP AND TUCK—equal, fairly matched.

No-HOW } by no
NOT BY A JUG FULL } means.

IT AINT NOTHING ELSE—it is certainly so.

ONE-HORSE CONCERN—an affair on a small scale.

OFFISH—distant, unsociable.

OLD MAN—husband.

OLD GENTLEMAN—father.

ON HAND—present.

LIKE PEAS ON A COWHIDE—with great rapidity.

PLAY SECOND FIDDLE—play a subordinate part.

POOR AS A CHURCH MOUSE—POOR AS JOB'S TURKEY—extremely poor.

POP THE QUESTION—propose marriage.

PLAIN AS THE NOSE ON ONE'S FACE—too plain to be overlooked or misunderstood.

PEG OUT—die.

PILE—fortune, great profits.

PLAYED OUT—obsolete.

PONY UP—pay.	CUT UP SHINES—frolic.
BE ON PINS AND NEEDLES—be uneasy.	SMELL A RAT—Suspect a trick.
RIDE A HIGH HORSE—live ostentatiously.	SPREAD LIKE WILD-FIRE—spread very rapidly.
RAIN CATS AND DOGS—rain violently.	SOUND ON THE GOOSE—sound on the main question, having right principles.
RAISE CAIN—make a violent noise.	NO GREAT SCRATCH—not of much consequence.
ROPE IN—decoy.	MORE THAN YOU CAN SHAKE A STICK AT—innumerable.
RUN ONE'S FACE—go on credit.	SOFT SOLDER—flattery.
RUN INTO THE GROUND—carry to excess.	SOME PUMPKINS—of some consideration.
SPEC—speculation.	SPREAD ONE'S SELF—make utmost effort.
SPECS—spectacles.	TIGHT—tipsy.
SHEEPSKIN—diploma.	A TIGHT—a strait.
SLOPE—elope or retire.	THE READY
TO SPOT—to mark, to notice.	THE RHINO
STREAKED — embarrassed, confused.	THE DUST.. } money, the cash.
SET BY THE EARS—put at variance.	THE TIN ... }
SEE WITH HALF AN EYE—see easily or at a glance.	THE DIMES
STIR ONE'S STUMPS—make haste.	TEETOTALLY—totally.
AS SURE AS YOU ARE BORN—undoubtedly, unquestionably.	UP TO THE HUB—wholly.
SING SMALL—make modest pretensions.	USE UP—exhaust.
CAST SHEEP'S EYES—look askance.	WALK INTO—punish severely.
	NO TWO WAYS ABOUT IT—undoubtedly so.
	THE WORST KIND—extremely, to the utmost.

NOTE.—It is proper here to say that departures from the strictest chastity of style are allowable, when it is the aim of the writer to cast ridicule or odium or contempt on a person or any other object. In such cases the style gains strength at the expense of chastity, and in the estimation of the writer and all who sympathize with him, the end justifies the means. Whether it does so or not must be determined in each particular instance by individual taste. The tendency in young writers, when they wish to be either humorous or severe, is to excessive indulgence in vulgarism.

LESSON XLII.

PRECISION.

PUPIL. What is meant by *precision* of diction?

TEACHER. A writer is said to be precise in his diction, when he uses no more words than are necessary to convey his full meaning.

PUPIL. I do not see what would induce a person to use unnecessary words.

TEACHER. Sometimes it is the result of not understanding the full meaning of words; sometimes it proceeds from the mistaken notion that a person's style is strengthened or beautified by the addition of words that are really unnecessary. And there is some ground for this opinion, for sometimes redundancies do have this effect.

PUPIL. What are redundancies?

TEACHER. *Redundant* words are those that are not strictly necessary for the full expression of the thought. An expression that contains redundant words is called a *pleonasm*.

PUPIL. Are all pleonasms violations of precision?

TEACHER. Not all of them; sometimes a redundant word adds some force to the expression, imparts something to the sentence which the writer does not wish it to lose. In such a case, the seeming redundancy is justifiable.

I will here append a list of superfluous expressions which are often found in the style of untrained writers, and generally with no reason to justify their use.

Advance forward.

Return again.

Return back.

Predict beforehand.

Transcript copy.

Retreat backward.

Repeat again.

First aggressor.

Old veteran.

Verdant green.

False traitor.
 Standard pattern.
 Sylvan forest.
 This here.
 From hence.
 Widow woman.
 Try an experiment.
 Substitute in the place of.
 Equally the same.
 Filled full.
 Both met together.
 Leisure on one's hand.
 Universal—of all men.
 Marry a wife.
 New beginner.
 Have got.
 Deliciously happy.
 More preferable.
 Umbrageous shade.

Another one.
 That there.
 From whence.
 Fainted away.
 Twice over.
 Shrink smaller.
 Since the time when.
 Free gratis.
 Mention over again.
 These six months past.
 No other person besides.
 Last final.
 Joyous bliss.
 Gleeeful merriment.
 Throughout the whole of.
 Universal panacea.
 Must necessarily.
 Most principal.
 Both—same.

There is another fault very similar to the one explained above, which is also a violation of precision. It is called *tautology*.

PUPIL. What is tautology?

TEACHER. Tautology is a repetition of the same idea in different words. Sometimes it consists in connecting together in one compound term several synonymous words; as,—

“These appearances are all counterfeit, deceptive, unreal, and illusory.”

“For coolness, self-possession, presence of mind, and steadiness of nerve in moments of danger, he was unequaled.”

“These different classes do so mix, mingle, and commingle that they can scarcely be distinguished.”

At other times it consists in reiterating an idea in different clauses of the same sentence; as,—

“Then the soul shall emerge from its clay tenement, the immortal part shall quit its earthy abode.”

Unless it is demanded by clearness or emphasis, tautology is a great blemish in style.

I will here append a few of the tautologous combinations that are most frequently met with.

The words marked by an asterisk (*) are not always tautological.

Acknowledge and confess.	Support and stay.*
Bounds and limits.	Wavering and unsettled.
Clear and obvious.*	Worship and adore.
Plain and evident.*	Support and bear up.
Advice and counsel.	Positive and peremptory.
Confused and disordered.	Certain and confident.
Effects and consequences.	Mutual to each other.
Fears and apprehensions.	Just and upright.
Assemble and meet together.	Vice, sin, and immorality.*
Dissemble and cloak.*	Agony and suffering.
Friendly and amicable.	Solemn and pathetic.*
Governed and conducted.*	Ruin and destruction.
Intents and purposes.*	Anguish and grief.
Mild and meek.*	Temperance and abstinence.
Obviate and prevent.	Acquiesce in and be satisfied
Pleasure and satisfaction.	with.
Safe and secure.	Question minutely and exam-
Special and particular.	ine at length.*

SENTENCES TO BE CRITICISED.

Hence, consequently, he must necessarily, therefore, be in error.

At the sonorous sound of the last final trump, all the inanimate dead shall rise up into life again.

The subject-matter of his discourse was excellent, but his style and manner of expressing himself were confused, disordered, and obscure.

I will freely give you my advice and counsel gratis, and charge nothing.

It is clear and obvious that he has no use for any of the laws and rules of versification.

Alfred the Great, of England, was one of the most remarkable and distinguished men that we read of in the historical records of past ages.

The man of probity and honesty will be trusted, and esteemed, and respected, and relied upon.

The mind and temper of him who is always continually in the bustle and turmoil of the world, will often be ruffled and frequently disturbed.

He appears to enjoy the universal esteem of all men.

This great politician always and in every case desisted from his designs and renounced them, when he found them to be impracticable or incapable of performance.

Thought and language act and react upon each other mutually.

I am certain and confident that the account I have given is correct and true, and in accordance with the facts.

The effects and consequences of such corruption and degeneracy are lamentable and deplorable.

Another old veteran of the cross has fallen and departed this life.

Our intercourse and association were all friendly and amicable until he married and became the husband of a wife.

She writes very well for a new beginner; I think she must take especial and particular pains to improve.

They were both fellow-citizens of the same state.

LESSON XLIII.

EUPHONY OF DICTION.

PUPIL. What is *euphony*?

TEACHER. Euphony is pleasantness of sound.

PUPIL. What is meant by the euphony of diction?

TEACHER. The diction of a writer is said to be euphonious when his discourse has a pleasing sound, as it is read or spoken.

PUPIL. I thought that depended upon the *elocution* of the reader or speaker.

TEACHER. It does to a great extent; but there is a difference in words themselves as to pleasantness or harshness of sound. Good taste requires that when there are two words, either of which would accurately express the meaning, we should use the one that sounds most pleasantly.

PUPIL. Are there any rules by which we are to be guided as to pleasantness of sound?

TEACHER. The best test is the actual pronunciation of the word; but by comparing together a great number of words, we find the following general principles governing in this matter:

1. Words or combinations of words that repeat the same sound in rapid recurrence, are to be avoided. This is called tautophony.

Examples: lowlily; ratiocination; been in intimacy.

2. Words in which either consonants or vowels are crowded together, are to be avoided.

Examples: pledg'd; burden'st; aëriform; buoying.

3. Words that contain several short unaccented syllables coming together, are to be avoided.

Examples: derogatorily; introductorily; unprecedentedness; imitativeness.

4. Words or combinations of words that bring together several long syllables, are unpleasant to the ear.

Examples: household work; an Iowa broad-horn; landlord's rights.

SENTENCES TO BE CRITICISED.

He was mortifyingly reprimanded for the mischievousness of his behavior.

A mild child is more liked than a wild child.

It is he that has committed the deed, at least accessorially.

This is distinctly stated in an encyclical letter of that age.

Proselytism prevails principally in the exclusive sects.

Though religion will acknowledgedly bring us under some restraints, they are very tolerable; and not only so, but on the whole, desirable.

Ambition creates alienation, aversion, contention, dissension, and sedition.

Maddest of all the contestants, thou rushedst into the midst of the hottest contest, and swervedst not.

Sober-mindedness and shame-facedness are by some considered as evidence of virtuousness of principle.

Hence the importance of compliance with precedents.

His disposition is not toward erudition, but to superficial acquisition of knowledge.

It was not a proper occasion for the use of moral suasion.

The habitual use of the written ritual rendered his performances formal.

Providence delivered them up to themselves, and they tormented themselves.

LESSON XLIV.

NARRATION AND DESCRIPTION.

Narration, in its purest form, is simply a relation of events in the order of their occurrence. But in this nude form it is hardly ever used in those compositions that are intended for entertainment. Narration becomes attractive and interesting when combined with other forms of composition, and chiefly with description. Whenever the course of events brings to view any remarkable objects or personages, it is always in good taste to give some description of their appearance or character.

In this combined form of narration and description very easy exercises can be assigned, and such as will be more of a recreation than a task to the pupil. At the same time, so extensive is this field that it has afforded ample scope to the most brilliant geniuses, and contains some of the most perfect specimens of style.

In order to secure originality, it will be well at first to confine the pupil to the narration of such occurrences as he has actually witnessed or taken a part in. It is recommended that exercises of this kind be alternated with the lessons and exercises in punctuation which are prescribed in the following pages.

SUBJECTS FOR COMPOSITIONS.

1. The history of yesterday, or of some remarkable day, not long past.
2. How we spent the last holiday.
3. An account of a school celebration.
4. A particular visit to a Sunday-school.

5. A particular attendance at church, with some account of the sermon.

NOTE.—If the pupil is of sufficient age, this can be made a most improving exercise, as it may embrace a narrative of the walk or ride to the church, the people assembling there, the opening exercises, the manner of the preacher, his style, the scope of his remarks, and the effect of what he said, either upon the congregation or upon the writer.

6. A visit to a friend in the *city*, if the pupil resides in the country; to a friend in the *country*, if the pupil resides in the city.

7. A ride or trip through the country.

8. An excursion to a waterfall, a cave, a mountain, a mine, any kind of a mill or factory, an alms-house or asylum or any public building.

9. A picnic or a fishing party.

10. A hunting excursion.

12. Any one of the ordinary pleasure-seeking occasions of the neighborhood or city.

NOTE.—In this exercise, the pupil must be cautioned against writing on such occasions in general, or describing them as a class of events. He must narrate the incidents of a particular occasion; tell what happened and what he saw, then and there.

It will readily occur to the teacher that exercises of this kind may advantageously be put in the form of letters. Let the pupil describe some little journey that he has actually made at some time or other, writing to a friend or relative as if from some place visited in the course of the journey, or as if at home after his return. Let him be encouraged in the letter to describe as well as he can all the interesting objects and persons that he saw, and to state his opinions about them.

After some practice in the narration of trips or journeys that he has actually taken, he may be allowed to try his hand at imaginary travel. Let him write a letter as if from some distant place at which he has just arrived, and describe the events and scenes of the journey thither. This will put into requisition his geographical knowledge, and give abundant play to his fancy. But he must be cautioned against filling up his letter with such dry items of information as can be culled from his text-books, or copying the incidents from other travels. The letter must be strictly original. -

RULES OF PUNCTUATION.

LESSON XLV.

SUBJECT-POINTING.

§ 1. A simple sentence is one that contains but one proposition.

§ 2. A simple sentence whose elements are arranged in a natural order, which contains no appositives or repetitions or compound terms or parenthetical expression, *need have no point except at its close.*

EXAMPLES.—The highest art of the mind of man is to possess itself with tranquillity in the hour of danger.

Sincere respect for the men of early times may be joined with a clear perception of their weaknesses.

Does the sanctity of the Sabbath depend upon the Creator's making the world in six literal days?

§ 3. When the logical subject is very long, so as to throw the grammatical subject some distance from the verb, a comma is generally necessary between the logical subject and predicate.

EXAMPLE.—The means resorted to by Justinian with a view to put an end to all the controversies arising on the application of scientific law,³ were as new as they were arbitrary.

What is the grammatical subject of this sentence? What is the grammatical predicate? Why is there a comma placed between the words *law* and *were*?

§ 4. Even when the logical subject is not very long, yet if by the operation of any subsequent rule, a comma occurs in the course of it, another comma is generally placed between it and the logical predicate.

EXAMPLES.—Satan, whom now transcendent glory raised above his fellows,⁴ spake.

In this example a comma is inserted after *Satan* by the operation of a rule that is yet to be laid down. But a comma being there, one must be inserted between *fellows* and *spake*, according to the rule now given.

The large volume of anecdotes of animals, interesting as its contents must be,⁴ has not yet been read.

§ 5. If the logical subject ends with a verb, it is often necessary to put a comma after it, to prevent obscurity.

EXAMPLES.—Whatever is,⁵ is right.

The desire to be remembered,⁵ has built the grandest structures on the globe.

APPOSITIVES AND ADJECTIVE PHRASES.

§ 6. Two or more words grouped together so as to form one complex name must not be separated by a comma.

EXAMPLES.—Paul the Apostle; Peter the Great; the river Indus; the Rocky Mountains; the Gulf of Mexico; the king of England; Jean Paul Richter, etc.

§ 7. But if one of the words of such a group is clearly a noun in apposition with the preceding noun, and quite distinct from it, forming no part of the name, a comma should separate the appositives.

EXAMPLES.—This was evidently written by Paul,⁷ the apostle of the Gentiles.

Have you ever read the life of Peter the Great,⁷ emperor of Russia?

Have you ever read the life of Peter,⁷ the great emperor of Russia?

Alfred,⁷ king of England,⁴ may be compared with David,⁷ king of Israel.

§ 8. But if one noun following another and referring to the same thing, is the secondary or attributive object of a transitive verb governing the first noun, then no comma should come between the primary and secondary object.

EXAMPLES.—We elected James⁸ our captain, and started on the march.

Here *captain* is the secondary object of the verb elected, and therefore no comma should separate it from *James*, the primary object.

§ 9. An adjective or participle phrase (not an adjunct), made to follow the noun which it modifies, is generally separated from it by a comma.

§ 10. But if the adjective or participle phrase comes after the primary object of a verb, after the manner of a secondary or attributive object, no comma should intervene.

EXAMPLES.—James,⁹ awkward in his person,⁴ was not qualified to command respect.

Truth,⁹ crushed to earth,⁴ shall rise again.

Hundreds of people,⁹ driven from their homes,⁴ suffer all the pains of hunger and exposure.

Thomas rendered himself¹⁰ useful to every one.

I saw him¹⁰ climbing the dangerous peak.

His bad luck only made him¹⁰ envious toward others more fortunate.

EXERCISES.

Let the pupil punctuate the following sentences, applying all the rules heretofore given.

In the Greek language, the word "poet" denotes a maker a creator.

The Apostle John was peculiarly beloved by his divine Master Jesus Christ the Savior of the world.

General Washington the first president of the United States was a true patriot a genuine lover of his country.

Marcus Aurelius Antoninus says, "Often return to your true mother Philosophy."

Much stress was laid upon delivery by the most eloquent of all orators Demosthenes.

London the capital of Great Britain contains nearly three millions of inhabitants.

I recommend the reading of good books, as a source of improvement and delight.

The first expedition of Columbus was fitted out by John of Anjou Duke of Calabria.

I Artaxerxes the king decree that whatsoever Ezra the priest the scribe of the law shall require shall be furnished him at the public expense.

The capital of Turkey Constantinople is finely situated on the European side of the Bosphorus.

And when the angel Death stands by, be thou my God my helper nigh.

When, as returns this solemn day, man comes to meet his Maker God.

The world-famed dramatist Shakespeare lived in the reign of the greatest of English queens Elizabeth.

Adonijah the son of Haggith came to Bathsheba the mother of Solomon.

Diogenes the Greek philosopher lived in a tub.

Johnson's "Allegory of Criticism" an early paper in the "Rambler" is a pertinent illustration.

Cato the elder one of the consuls of Rome never wore a coat which cost him above a hundred pence.

Hope the balm of life soothes us under every misfortune.

Nature has given some conceptions of immortality to men of every age.

The earth-clod of the globe has been divinely breathed upon.

Deviations from rectitude necessarily result in misery.

He being dead unto this world's charms shall live all the more in the joyful realization of the world unseen.

The poor being crowded in filth cease to respect one another.

His being a scholar prevented any gross mistake in his style.

He who masters his passions conquers his worst enemy.

The idea of what ought to be rises from the bosom of what is.

It needs a divine man to exhibit any thing divine.

It is our duty to appropriate our time to valuable purposes.

It is not in our power to change the established order of things.

He who follows the pleasures of the world is in constant search of care and remorse.

The soul overwhelmed with shame and remorse feels itself shut out from heaven.

The truly benevolent full of desire to answer all demands do not think it troublesome to aid the wretched.

Peter the Hermit fanatic though he was stirred to action the holiest passions then known to mankind.

Then Jesus, moved with compassion put forth his hand, and touched him, and said, "I will; be thou clean."

A great and gloomy man the king sat upon the throne of his ancestors.

LESSON XLVI.

COMPOUND TERMS.

§ 11. A compound term is one composed of two or more co-ordinate words, connected by a co-ordinating conjunction, expressed or understood.

Words are said to be co-ordinate when they are of the same part of speech, and sustain precisely the same relation to other words in the sentence, except it may be those words by which one of the co-ordinates is modified and not the others.

§ 12. If a compound term consists of no more than two co-ordinates, and these words are accompanied by no modifiers except limiting adjectives, and if the conjunction is expressed between them, then no comma should intervene.

§ 13. But if the conjunction is omitted, or if either one of the co-ordinates is accompanied by important modifying words, then a comma should be inserted between them.

EXAMPLES.—Peter¹² and John went up into the temple to pray.

Great ideas elevate¹² and ennoble the mind.

Richter said, "I love God¹² and little children."

All great¹² and good men reverence the Bible.

The useful¹² and the beautiful are never far apart.

Your letter is received,¹³ and placed on file.

A fife,¹³ and a huge bass-drum constituted the entire band.

§ 14. If a compound term consists of more than two co-ordinate words, these must be separated from one

another by commas, whether a connective is expressed or understood.

§ 15. If the co-ordinates are coupled together in pairs, commas should separate the pairs, but not the individual words in each pair.

EXAMPLES.—Matthew,¹⁴ Mark,¹⁴ Luke,¹⁴ and John are the four evangelists.

The mind is that which knows,¹⁴ thinks,¹⁴ feels,¹⁴ and wills.

Milton's poetry is always healthful,¹⁴ bright,¹⁴ and vigorous.

Early to bed,¹³ and early to rise,⁴

Will make a man healthy,¹⁴ and wealthy,¹⁴ and wise.

When saw we thee ahungered,¹⁴ or athirst,¹⁴ or a stranger,¹⁴ or naked,¹⁴ or sick,¹⁴ or in prison, and did not minister to thee.

EXERCISES.

Let the pupil supply points according to the foregoing rules.

How many a knot of mystery and misunderstanding would be untied by one word spoken in simple and confiding truth of heart!

The balmy influences of neither sea nor sky could revive or restore that great man.

The greatest genius is never so great as when it is chastised and subdued by the highest reason.

The Greek and Roman writers were once understood and relished in a remarkable degree.

If we would not like to be frightened or deceived ourselves, it can not be right to frighten or deceive others.

The charms and beauty of Nature can truly delight him only who in her life views his own.

Morality and religion itself, are degraded by the use of unmeaning terms.

Is it sickness or selfishness that spreads most misery through our homes?

The first end to which all wisdom or knowledge ought to be employed is to illustrate the wisdom and goodness of God.

The young shepherd promised to buy me a pretty brown ribbon.

All all, conjure us to act wisely faithfully, in the relation which we sustain.

The rosy-crowned Loves, with their many-twinkling feet, frisk with antic Sports and blue-eyed Pleasures.

The intellect and the conscience are intimately indissolubly bound together.

Not a few of the wisest grandest spirits have toiled at the work-bench and the plow.

The human mind spreads its thoughts abroad into the immeasurable the infinite.

The recovery of our little darling dancing singing Mary is worth all the gold that ever was mined.

Is a poet utterly deprived of fitting themes, to whom ocean earth and sky are open?

The hardships of a good life prove refine and exalt the human character.

No one can find peace but in the growth of an enlightened firm benevolent holy mind.

All that charms the eye or the ear or the imagination or the heart is the gift of God.

Ease indulgence luxury sloth, are the sources of misery; making a man a poor sordid selfish wretched being.

True courage is the exercise result and expression of the highest attributes of our nature.

All have some conceptions of truth kindness honesty self-denial and disinterestedness.

Let us every day become more pure kind gentle patient spiritual and devout.

The sphere in which we move and act and understand is of a wider circumference to one creature than another.

Some have neither the resolution nor the power of carrying their projects to a completion.

Pope examined lines and words with minute and punctilious observation.

I would calmly and humbly submit myself to the good and blessed will of God.

Let us greet and take by the hand, those who were our youthful companions.

A thoughtless person perpetually acts and speaks as if it were of no consequence what is said or done.

The most ferocious conflicts have been brightened by examples of magnanimous and patriotic virtue.

The human heart beats quick at the sight or hearing of courageous and disinterested deeds.

Let not the hours of hospitality and pleasure interfere with the discharge of our necessary duties.

In buying and selling, we must not in any way cheat or overreach each other.

NOTE.—When the conjunction *or* is used to introduce an explanatory word or phrase, it should be preceded by a comma.

Example.—This little pit in the sand is formed by the antlion, or doodle-bug.

The Hebrew is closely allied to the Arabic the Phœnician the old Persian the Syriac and the Chaldee.

Our present knowledge thoughts feelings characters, are the results of former impressions passions and pursuits.

In heaven live the friends benefactors deliverers and ornaments of their race.

In a city there is much to inflame imbitter degrade, the minds of the poor.

Some have unreasonably denied the strength and fervor and enduringness of human love.

Meekly truthfully disinterestedly, the dying man had trod the path of life.

Fountains lakes and rivers are as refreshing to the imagination as to the soil through which they pass.

The stoical sect was distinguished for producing the most active intrepid virtuous men that ever did honor to human nature.

In God we see every thing that we can imagine as great glorious or amiable.

We are surer that we think and feel and will than that we have solid and extended limbs and organs.

Scholars have great pleasure in reading Herodotus Thucydides Xenophon Livy Sallust and Tacitus.

The man of true refinement will not object to enter into the honest heartfelt enjoyments of common life.

The sugar-cane and coffee-plant welcomed us from the snows of the Great St. Bernard.

All things must work together for certain good, so long as we continue in free unconditional self-surrender to the service of God.

Life is to some a heavy benumbing weight of personal helplessness and desolation.

No great social change, however beneficial, can occur without partial temporary pain.

A diviner philosophy awakens the soul to earnest joyful effort for its own perfection.

LESSON XLVII.

TRANSPOSITION.

§ 16. When there is a transposition of the elements of a sentence, whereby any member, clause, phrase, or adjunct is thrown out of its natural place, the dislocated part of the sentence must be separated from the rest by one or two commas.

To this rule there are the following three exceptions:

§ 17. (1) When the sentence is not very long, and the inversion is so complete as to throw the subject last, no comma is required.

§ 18. (2) When the transposition is made by placing a very short adjunct at the beginning of a sentence, the comma may be omitted, if the omission will not cause obscurity.

§ 19. (3) Transpositions are so frequent and natural in poetry that the same strictness is not required in marking them as in prose.

§ 20. Whenever an adjunct (a preposition with the word governed by it, with or without accompanying modifiers), is thrown at some distance from the word which it modifies, by the intervention of other words having precedence over the adjunct, it is generally necessary, for the sake of clearness, to place a comma before the adjunct.

EXAMPLES.—To those who labor,¹⁶ sleep is doubly pleasant.
 Of all the passions,¹⁶ pride is the most unsocial.
 All the appearances of nature,¹⁶ I was careful to study.
 Whether such a person as Homer ever existed,¹⁶ we can not say.
 Whom he loveth,¹⁶ he chasteneth.
 "Life,"¹⁶ says Seneca,¹⁶ "is a voyage."
 Silver and gold¹⁷ have¹⁷ I none.
 A train-band captain eke was he.
 In infancy¹⁸ the mind is peculiarly ductile.
 To thee¹⁸ I pour my prayer.

When first thy sire¹⁹ to send¹⁹ on earth¹⁹
 Virtue,⁷ his darling child,⁴ designed.

You owe these efforts to be agreeable to all with whom you associate,²⁰ at all times,²⁰ and in all places,²⁰ as a matter of politeness.

Cultivate your intellectual powers,²⁰ especially by habits of study and reflection.

(Observe that the adverb *especially* qualifies, not the verb *cultivate*, but the following adjunct; hence the comma is placed before it, for it is a part of the adjunct.)

EXERCISES.

Let the pupil supply all the points according to the foregoing rules.

In the acuteness of the external senses some of the inferior animals excel our species.

Over matchless talents probity should throw its brightest luster.

In every material action of your life consider well its probable result.

Only in the light of a sublime faith can the history of our race be read without despondency.

In the ruffled and angry hour we view every appearance through a false medium.

In these hours of golden leisure my chief haunt is the banks of a small stream.

This view of religion I propose to make the subject of some free discussion.

On feelings allied to these priestcraft and sorcery have often fastened themselves.

From the little root of a few letters science has spread its branches over all nature, and raised its head to the heavens.

How superior is the man of forbearance and gentleness to every other man in the collisions of society !

Christianity represents physical evil as the direct appointment of God's love under the guidance and control of his wisdom.

The saint owes much of the grace and elegance of his spirit to the influences of sorrow in some form.

A great mind is formed by a few great ideas not by an infinity of loose details.

We can not bid farewell to so large a portion of human history without deep and earnest thought.

But do not grumble over any evidences of ingratitude that you meet with from your friends even to your most intimate companions.

In order to improve the mind we ought less to learn than to contemplate.

With what you have be satisfied.

All you hear believe not.

In the hurry and eagerness of selfish competition we underrate the silent influence of moral character.

When others are asleep in its own contemplations the soul finds a source of solace and pleasure.

In not learning your business perfectly you can not give satisfaction to your employer.

To every character its fitting position and appropriate function have been assigned.

Of all the great men whom Germany has produced Luther has most German character.

By doing nothing we learn to do ill.

To command any subject adequately we must stand above it.

Through the dim veil of the visible and perishing man catches a glimpse of the vast magnificence of the unseen and the eternal.

Into every human being God has breathed an immortal soul.

LESSON XLVIII.

PARENTHETICALS AND INTERPOSITIONS.

§ 21. Any word, phrase, or clause, that is inserted in a sentence to explain the leading proposition, or introduce an incidental remark, is called a *parenthesis*, and

must be designated as such by being inclosed in the curve marks (such as those which inclose this clause).

EXAMPLES.—Matilda (²¹such was the lady's name)²¹ smiled sweetly at this address.

Are you still (²¹I fear from the tone of your letter you must be)²¹ troubled with these apprehensions?

For I know that in me (²¹that is, in my flesh)²¹ dwelleth no good thing.

§ 22. Some recent writers use, instead of parenthetic curves, two dashes, to inclose a parenthesis; but the practice, though it may be tolerated, is hardly to be encouraged.

§ 23. Sometimes a word, phrase, or clause, though properly belonging to the sentence, is introduced in such a manner as to interrupt the regular connection of the other words in the sentence, somewhat in the manner of a parenthesis. This is called an *interposed* word or phrase, and it must always be separated by points from the rest of the sentence.

§ 24. If the interposed phrase is short and simple, so as to require no commas within it, a comma before and after it is proper.

§ 25. But if it contains a comma in itself, then it may be preceded and followed by a dash.

EXAMPLES.—The passions of mankind,²³ however,²³ frequently blind them.

Nothing on earth,²³ I tell you,²³ could induce me to reveal it.

Nations,²³ as well as men,²³ fail in nothing that they boldly and resolutely attempt.

Every passion,²³ however base or unworthy,²³ is eloquent.

I would stamp God's name,²³ and not Satan's,²³ upon every innocent pleasure.

Milton was,²³ like Dante,²⁵ a statesman and a lover.

In the heathen world,—²⁵where man had no divine revelation, but followed the impulse of nature alone,—²⁵religion was the basis of civil government.

§ 26. This rule may be interpreted to cover those forms of quotation in which the specification of the author is succinctly given near the beginning of the quotation.

EXAMPLES.—“I am glad,”²⁶ said the priest,²⁶ “that you are come.”

“With all thy getting,”²⁶ says Solomon,²⁶ “get understanding.”

EXERCISES.

Let the pupil supply the points according to the foregoing rules.

Here in all conscience he should have stopped.

A contract to be valid must be for some legitimate object or purpose.

Some men are refined like gold in the furnace of affliction.

A single hour in the day steadily given to the study of an interesting subject brings unexpected accumulations of knowledge.

Benevolence is on whatever side we may contemplate the subject a god-like virtue.

True it is that were we cast from birth into solitude we should grow up in brutal ignorance.

Excellence is in any position almost the infallible result of the determination to excel.

“The virtuous man” it has been beautifully said “proceeds without constraint in the path of his duty.”

In Dante for the first time in an uninspired bard the dawn of a spiritual day breaks upon us.

But when the subject for grief is fixed and inevitable sorrow is to be borne like pain.

A people should honor and cultivate as unspeakably useful that literature which calls forth the highest faculties.

Without fairness of mind which is only another phrase for disinterested love of truth great native powers of understanding are perverted.

Simple truths when simply explained are more easily comprehended I believe than is commonly supposed.

And if the intellect requires to be provided with perpetual objects what must it be with the affections?

I maintain, that as knowledge extends the range of all imagery is enlarged; and what is far more important that the conception kindles by the contemplation of higher objects.

Fanaticism in its ill sense is that which makes a man blind to perceive the falseness of an error.

Washington's courage whether in battle or in council was as perfect as might be expected from his pure and steady temper of soul.

The love of the beautiful and true like the dew-drop in the heart of the crystal remains forever clear and liquid in the inmost shrine of man's being.

Numerous instances there have been as every reader knows of those who have thrown down every obstacle in the way of their mental elevation.

We can not see an individual expire though a stranger or an enemy without being prompted by compassion to lend him every assistance in our power.

Not a few are the incitements of the working classes would they were greater! to the accumulation of property, and even to the investment of land.

There is nothing that we call a good which may not be converted into a curse that is, nothing that is providential or external, and not of the soul; nor is there an evil of that nature which is not thoroughly a good.

Under God, and by those spiritual aids which are ever vouchsafed in exact proportion to our endeavors to obtain them, how gracious and glorious is this truth! we are morally and religiously, as well as intellectually, the makers of ourselves.

There is a power have you not felt it? in the presence, conversation, and example of a man of strong principle and magnanimity, to lift us at least for the moment from our vulgar and tame habits of thought, and to kindle some generous aspirations after the excellence which we were made to attain.

I mention these instances, not to undervalue science it would be folly to attempt that; for science, when true to its name, is true knowledge, but to show that its name is sometimes wrongfully assumed, and that its professors when not guided by humility may prove but misleading counselors.

No lesson of a practical kind and all lessons ought to be practical requires to be so often repeated as that which enjoins upon the mind a state of passivity; for what an electrical thing is it! How does it dart forth after this and that, flitting from sweet to sweet for it never willingly tastes of bitter things, and "feeding itself without fear"!

Inquiring the road to Merlington, I addressed him by the name of Honesty. The fellow whether to show his wit before his mistress,

or whether he was displeased with my familiarity, I can not tell directed me to follow a part of my face which, I was well assured, could be no guide to me, and which the other parts would follow of consequence.

Socrates has often expressly said, that he considered human life in general and without doubt the state of the world in his day must have eminently tended to make him so consider it in the light of an imprisonment of the soul, or of a malady under which the nobler spirit is condemned to linger, until it be set free and purified by the healing touch of death.

LESSON XLIX.

INDEPENDENTS AND CONTEXTUALS.

§ 27. All words and phrases that are either independent (absolute) or contextual, or in any manner unconnected with the structural part of the sentence, must be separated from it by one comma, or two if necessary.

Contextual words are those that indicate the connection of the sentence, as a whole, with the paragraph, or the body of the discourse.

It must be borne in mind that sometimes a word is rendered independent by a change in the construction of the sentence. For example, "He that hath ears to hear, let him hear."

The comma comes after *hear*, because the first part of the sentence is made independent by change of structure.

To the foregoing rules there are two exceptions :

§ 28. (1) Interjections, exclamations, and some vocative words and phrases are followed by the exclamation point.

§ 29. (2) The responsive words, *yes*, *yea*, *no*, *nay*, are sometimes separated from the rest of the sentence by a comma, a semicolon, or even a colon, according to the closeness of the connection implied.

EXAMPLES.—Secondly,²⁷ this conduct is forbidden in the Bible, in express terms.

Unquestionably,²⁷ Napoleon was a genius.

In the last place,²⁷ my hearers,²⁷ this is a word of comfort.

Generally speaking,²⁷ the slaves were contented.

Why,²⁷ this is rank injustice.

Well,²⁷ do as you please.

Boy,²⁷ bring me my horse.

Come,²⁷ Anthony,²⁷ and young Octavius,²⁷ come,²⁷ revenge yourselves alone on Cassius.

To return to my subject,²⁷ I would remark that these principles are acknowledged by all who have discussed the question.

This said,²⁷ he formed thee,²⁷ Adam,²⁷—thee,²⁷ O man!

Merciful heaven!²⁸ how can we save him?

Alas!²⁸ my noble boy!²⁸ that thou shouldst die!

Soldiers and fellow-citizens!²⁸ I congratulate you on this victory.

Yes,²⁹ and he has broken the pitcher.—No,²⁹ he has n't.

Yes;²⁹ mother says those talk most who think least.

Has he left you?—Yes:²⁹ but I care not.

EXERCISE.

Let the pupil supply the points according to the foregoing rules.

Continue my dear James to make virtue your principal study.

Acquire my daughters the habit of doing every thing well.

Descend from heaven Urania.

Sir the declaration will inspire the people with increased courage.

This my lords is a perilous and tremendous moment.

Verres what have you to advance against this charge?

Morning is the best time to study my dear children.

Thou who despisest the outward forms lose not the inward spirit.

Whose gray top shall tremble he descending.

The baptism of John was it from heaven or of men.

This point admitted we proceed to the next division of our subject.

The boy oh! where was he?

Man to man steel to steel they met their enemy.

Shame being lost all virtue is lost.

Their countenances expressive of deep humiliation they entered the palace.

O wretched we devoid of hope and comfort.

That man of sorrow oh how changed he was to those who now beheld him.

The conquest of Spain their object they left no means untried for effecting a landing on the Peninsula.

Honor once lost life is worthless.

The summing up having been completed on both sides the judge next proceeded to charge the jury.

I whither can I go?

Our time how swiftly it passes away!

Her dimples and pleasant smile how beautiful they are!

My banks they are covered with bees.

The companion of my infancy and friend of my riper years she has gone to her rest and left me to deplore my bereavement.

Earthly happiness what is it where can it be found?

The bride she smiled; and the bride she blushed.

On the contrary I believe that truth is the great inspirer.

Undoubtedly the statement he made is false.

But lastly let us examine the truth of these arguments.

There are to confess the truth few who are fully qualified for the high office of governing their fellows.

Horne Tooke having taken orders he was refused admission to the bar.

A state of ease is generally speaking more attainable than a state of pleasure.

Virtue being abandoned we become terrified with imaginary evils.

Those who are truly my friends let them come to my assistance.

To take some men at their word you would suppose they believed only one class in society entitled to consideration.

This gentleman take him for all in all possessed a greater variety of knowledge than any man I ever knew.

The prince his father being dead succeeded to the throne.

This is to say nothing worse highly reprehensible.

LESSON L.

ENUMERATIONS.

§ 30. When there is an enumeration of items, or examples, or particulars, if it is formally introduced by such words as *thus*, *following*, *as follows*, *this*, *these*, etc., the whole enumeration must be preceded by a colon, and the several items separated by semicolons or commas, according to their length.

§ 31. But if no such formal introductory word is used, and if the enumeration comes at the end of a sentence, a semicolon must precede it, and commas must separate the items.

§ 32. Sometimes it is thought desirable to denote the enumeration in the form of a column or vertical list, still retaining its sentential connection with the foregoing matter. In that case a dash must precede the enumeration.

§ 33. If an enumeration is introduced into the very body of a sentence, whether preceded by the connective *as* or not, it is to be accompanied and separated by commas throughout.

EXAMPLES.—The human family is composed of five races, as follows:³⁰ the Caucasian,³⁰ the Mongolian,³⁰ the American,³⁰ the Maylayan,³⁰ and the African.

There are four genders;³¹ the masculine,³¹ the feminine,³¹ the common,³¹ and the neuter.

I will put these articles to you at the following prices, viz.—³²

Sugar @ 18 cents;³⁰

Coffee @ 32 “

Rice @ 15 “

Articles for which *we* are dependent on foreign commerce,—as coffee,³³ tea,³³ pepper,³³ cinnamon,³³ and spice,—are,²³ after all,²³ not among the necessities of life.

THE COINCIDING OF POINTS.

§ 34. Whenever two rules coincide in requiring a point at one place, the greater point supersedes the less. But if one of them is a dash, or the period indicating an abbreviation, both points should be used. Nevertheless, with the single exception of the exclamation point, it is not allowed to double any point.

EXAMPLES.—The question, What is beauty?³⁴ it will puzzle any one to answer.

If he desires the degree of A. M.,³⁴ let him see that he deserves it.

I take—³⁴ eh!—³⁴ as much 'exercise—³⁴ eh!—³⁴ as I can,²⁷
Madam Gout.

EXERCISES TO BE PUNCTUATED

The inseparable preposition *pre* is derived from the Latin *præ*; as in "prefix prejudice predetermine."

Some men distinguish the period of the world into four ages viz. the golden age the silver age the brazen age and the iron age.

Logicians say that the operations of the mind are three namely
1. Simple apprehension 2. Judgment 3. Discourse or reasoning.

Our duties to individuals are classed under four heads viz. as arising from affinity friendship benefits received contract.

Find the increase in the population from 1790 to 1800 to 1810
1820 1830 1830 1840 1850 from 1800 to 1810 1810 to 1850.

Messrs Wright, Handy and Co to Elias Webb debtors to 4 hhds.
Prime Sugar 64 cwt at \$11 per cwt \$704.00 5 tierces Clean Rice
40 cwt at \$9 per cwt. \$360.00 Total \$1064.00 Received payment
July 12th 1870 ELIAS WEBB

(Put the foregoing in bill form and punctuate.)

LESSON LI.

COMPLEX SENTENCES.

§ 35. A complex sentence is one that contains two or more propositions, one of which is called the leading or principal clause, and the others modify either the entire predicate of that clause or else some single word in the clause. These are called subordinate clauses.

§ 36. A subordinate clause modifying some single word of the leading clause is said to be *restrictive*, when it is essential to the meaning of that word, as it is intended to be taken in the sentence.

EXAMPLES.—The man *who is my friend* would not speak so.

The clause *who is my friend* is the subordinate clause, and modifies the noun *man*. It is also restrictive, because it is essential to the meaning of the term *the man*.

George Young, *who is my friend*, has arrived in the city.

In this sentence the very same words, *who is my friend*, constitute the subordinate clause, and modify the name *George Young*. But the clause is not restrictive, for, if it were omitted, it would not affect the meaning or truth of the leading clause, *George Young has arrived in the city*.

§ 37. EVERY SUBORDINATE CLAUSE OF A COMPLEX SENTENCE MUST BE SEPARATED FROM ITS LEADING CLAUSE BY A COMMA OR COMMAS.

Except in the following cases:

§ 38. I. When either the leading clause or the subordinate clause is *very short*, and the latter comes directly after the former;

§ 39. II. When the subordinate is a *dependent substantive* clause, and comes *after* the leading verb;

§ 40. III. When the subordinate is a *restrictive* clause, and closely connected to the word which it modifies by a relative pronoun or a conjunctive adverb;

§ 41. IV. When the subordinate is introduced by one of the conjunctions *that*, *as*, or *than*, referring to a corresponding word in the leading clause. The corresponding words or antecedents preceding these conjunctions that do not allow a comma to separate them, are:

<i>Such</i> <i>So</i>	}	before <i>that</i> ;
<i>As</i> <i>Not so</i>	}	before <i>as</i> ;
<i>Other</i> <i>Else</i> or any comparative	}	before <i>than</i> .

§ 42. CAUTION.—*It must be observed, however, that the foregoing exceptions are overruled, and do not apply in the following cases:*

§ 43. I. When the subordinate precedes the leading clause (by § 16);

§ 44. II. When the subordinate clause is considerably removed from the word which it modifies, by other words intervening;

§ 45. III. When the term modified by the subordinate clause is compound;

§ 46. IV. When there are several subordinate clauses modifying the same term.

EXAMPLES.—Wealth is of no real use,³⁷ unless it be well employed.

Decide not by authoritative rules,³⁷ when they are inconsistent with reason.

We obey the laws of society,³⁷ because they are the laws of virtue.

If their lungs receive our air,³⁷ that moment they are free.

We would be ashamed of many of our actions,³⁷ were the world acquainted with our motives.

Tell me³⁸ when you expect your brother to arrive.

Socrates said³⁹ that he believed in the immortality of the soul.

I will go⁴⁰ whither thou goest.

He went away³⁸ when I came.

Go³⁸ where glory waits thee.

When beggars die,⁴³ there are no comets seen.

Socrates announced to his companions,³⁷ as they stood weeping around him,⁴⁴ that he believed in the immortality of the soul.

He will capture all the horses,¹⁴ mules,¹⁴ and cattle,⁴⁵ that he may meet in his march.

Come,⁴⁶ when you please,⁴⁶ as you please,⁴⁶ with whom you please.

What is more wonderful than the human eye,³⁷ that sees all around.

Remember whose eye it is⁴⁰ that sees you.

He was so much agitated⁴¹ that he could not speak.

It is better to trust in the Lord⁴¹ than to put confidence in man.

Hear the words⁴⁰ that I speak to thee.

So shall my word be,³⁷ that goeth out of my mouth.

Honor thy father and thy mother,³⁷ that thy days may be long in the land.

I will now retire,³⁷ as I am no longer wanted.

I will now retire⁴⁰ as I entered.

EXERCISES.

Punctuate according to the foregoing rules.

There is a philosophic spirit which is far more valuable than any limited acquirements of philosophy.

We read with a reverential love of men devoting themselves to the interests of humanity.

The lever which moves the world of mind is emphatically the printing-press.

Youth is introductory to manhood to which it is a state of preparation.

To the Father of lights in whom there is no darkness are we indebted for all the blessings we enjoy.

Some countries are infested with bands of robbers who attack travelers in the open day.

Set at naught the grosser pleasures of sense whereof others are slaves.

May we be living flowers in those everlasting gardens of the Lord where angels and seraphs are the guardians!

Antiquity would have raised altars to that vast and mighty genius who for the advantage of human kind could tame the rage of thunder and of despotism.

The brightest part of thy life is nothing but a flower which withers almost as soon as it has blown.

Columbus was sent to the University of Padua where he acquired such knowledge as was then taught.

Does the sentiment of patriotism reign in the common soldier who hires himself to be shot at for a few cents a day.

A government directing itself resolutely and steadily to the general good becomes a minister of virtue.

The entrance on a new course awakens new energies and powers which rapidly unfold into life and vigor.

The tribes that expose new-born infants condemn those who abandon their decrepit parents to destruction.

The father of history was Herodotus from whom we have an account of the Persian war.

No man can be a thorough proficient in navigation who has never been at sea.

We should trace in all events the wisdom and benevolence of God from whom descendeth every good and perfect gift.

A good reader will often pause where no grammarian would insert a point; and on the other hand he will sometimes neglect the commas he finds inserted by the writer.

The doll-shop is as fit a place for studying character as the fashionable dinner-party, the assembly, or the ball-room.

Better live an honest poor man than die a selfish and grasping millionaire.

The rarer the beauty of the external scene the deeper should be the impression of the unseen God.

The evidence of things invisible can never be such as those who rely on purely intellectual assurance will demand.

The more a man speaks of himself the less he likes to hear another spoken of.

Nothing appears to us so beautiful in human experience as the reciprocal affection of parents and children.

The progress of some men is so rapid that they keep ahead of common sense.

Art is capable of not only imitating Nature in her graces but even of adorning her with graces of her own.

Rather do good than seem to be good.

So live with men as if God saw you.

Either the mere will of the magistrate or the conscience of the individual must decide in the case.

I am as much known to God as if I were the single object of his attention.

Some people endeavor to divert their thoughts lest their minds should reproach them.

We were present when General Lafayette embarked at Havre for New York.

If there be nothing celestial without us it is only because all is earthly within.

Let all dispose their hours till midnight when again we pray your presence.

In how small a compass lie all the elements of man's truest happiness if society were only conducted in a rational spirit!

Suppress the first desires of evil as soon as they arise, and extinguish the spark before it spreads.

There never is true eloquence except when great principles and sentiments have entered into the substance of the soul.

We live that we may die.

Attend that you may receive instruction.

If women fulfilled truly their divine errand there would be no need of reforming societies.

We compare the divine Mind with ours that we may have something within the grasp of our reason to dwell upon.

It is the spirit or motive with which we may do any work that constitutes it base or noble.

There was nothing in the mind of Jesus of which you have not the principle and the capacity in yourself.

Science and Poetry equally recognizing the order and the beauty of the universe are alike handmaids of Devotion.

Go not from the world with the joyless consciousness of those to whom the fountains of its purest bliss have been sealed.

Aid in reforming those social abuses the existence of which casts a gloom and blight on the happiness of all.

The benefit arising to us from an enlarged understanding can not well be overrated.

The seeds of genius which contain within themselves the germs of expanded beauties and divinest sublimities can not perish.

You may treat life as a problem which has to be wrought out to a successful result.

The memory of the eyes that hung over a man in infancy and childhood will haunt him through all his after life.

The Greeks may well boast of having produced a Euclid whose works are esteemed even by the profoundest mathematicians in modern times.

When the great man is laid in his grave lies of malice are apt to give way to lies of adulation.

A man may comfort himself for the wrinkles in his face provided his heart be fortified with virtue.

We can not turn in any direction where the Creator's love does not smile around us.

Unless he put a bridle upon his tongue the babbler will soon shut himself out from all society.

Have respect for yourself that others may not disrespect you.

Where true religion has prevented one crime false religions have afforded a pretext for a thousand.

Remember your own feelings in order that you may judge of the feelings of others.

LESSON LII.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

§ 47. A compound sentence is one that is composed of two or more propositions, neither of which modifies any part of the other or others.

The parts or propositions composing a compound sentence, are called, not its clauses, but its members.

§ 48. If a conjunction is used to connect the members of a compound sentence, it must be a co-ordinating conjunction: very often no connective whatever is used.

§ 49. In some cases the last member of a compound sentence is connected to the preceding by a relative pronoun or conjunctive adverb, whose antecedent is no particular word in the foregoing member, but the fact expressed by the whole proposition.

The members of a full compound sentence are separated either by a colon, a semicolon, or a comma:

§ 50. I. A colon, if the members are long, and no connective is expressed;

§ 51. II. A semicolon, if the members are short, and there is no connective, or long, *with* a connective;

§ 52. III. A comma, if the members are short, and the connective is expressed.

EXAMPLES.—Satire should not be like a saw, but a sword:⁵⁰ it should cut and not mangle.

Do not think yourself perfect;⁵¹ it is human to err.

Harbor no malice in thy heart;⁵¹ it will be a viper in thy bosom.

It is unworthy of one great people to think falsely of another:⁵⁰ it is unjust,⁵² and therefore it is unworthy.

Religion must be the spirit of every hour;⁵¹ but it can not be the meditation of every hour.

He is a freeman whom the truth makes free,⁵² and all are slaves beside.

The Jews ruin themselves at their Passover;⁵¹ the Moors, at their marriages;⁵¹ and the Christians in their law-suits.

Scott built a castle,⁵² but he broke his heart.

I have promised to pay it,⁵² and I will pay it.

For I am a man under authority, having soldiers under me;⁵¹ and I say to this man,³⁷ "Go,"⁵² and he goeth;⁵¹ and to another,³⁷ "Come,"⁵² and he cometh;⁵¹ and to my servant,³⁷ "Do this,"⁵² and he doeth it.

He will not take the prescribed remedies;⁵¹ which makes his case hopeless.

They obstinately refused to give bail;⁵¹ whereupon the judge remanded them to prison.

They desired that we should remember the poor;⁵¹ the same which I also was forward to do.

He has consented to insert the word in the bill;⁵¹ which is all that I asked.

EXERCISES TO BE PUNCTUATED.

Make a proper use of your time for the loss of it can never be regained.

Truth will pass down in fragments to posterity but posterity will collect and compose them into a whole.

Ivy is the beauty of old ruins and your faith is not unlike it for it springs up as strongly from amidst fallen hopes.

The most exact economy was observed yet nothing was mean or uncomfortable.

Chaucer followed Nature everywhere but never went beyond her.

Good and evil are inseparable companions but the latter often hides behind the back of the former.

The proud have no friends in prosperity for then they know nobody and none in adversity for then no one knows them.

Property left to a child may soon be lost but the inheritance of virtue will abide forever.

Outward suffering is the lot of human nature and it is cheering to see it bravely borne even on the battle-field.

The study of truth is perpetually joined with the love of virtue for there is no virtue which derives not its origin from truth.

A little philosophy inclineth men's minds to atheism but depth in philosophy bringeth men's minds to religion.

Some persons make a long story short but most persons make a short story long.

Very few works of this class possessed any literary merit but many of them are valuable or curious as records of facts.

Great events give scope for great virtues but the main tenor of human life is composed of small occurrences.

The esteem of wise and good men is the greatest of all temporal encouragements to virtue and it is the mark of an abandoned spirit to have no regard for it.

The great national epochs are also the epochs of intellectual cultivation and, accordingly, our literary annals may be arranged in four successive periods.

When a writer reasons we look only for perspicuity when he describes we expect embellishments when he decides or relates we desire plainness and simplicity.

The Christian orator speaks the truth plainly to his hearers he awakens them he shows them their impending danger he excites them to action.

The temples are profaned the soldier's curse resounds in the house of God the marble pavement is trampled by iron hoofs horses neigh beside the altar.

The silence of nature is more impressive would we understand it than any speech could be it expresses what no speech can utter.

The philosophies of antiquity addressed themselves to the intellect the simple words of Jesus lay hold of the heart.

Contemporaries appreciate the man rather than his merit posterity will regard the merit rather than the man.

The actions of men are like the index of a book they point out what is most remarkable in them.

Character is like stock in trade the more of it a man possesses the greater his facilities for making additions to it.

Men are often warned against old prejudices I would rather warn them against new conceits.

The greatness of a gift can not be determined by its absolute amount it can be truly ascertained only by a moral standard.

It is with narrow-souled people as with narrow-necked bottles the less they have in them the more noise they make in pouring it out.

He is poor perhaps his plans have been defeated he finds it difficult to provide for the exigencies of life sickness is permitted to invade the quiet of his household long confinement imprisons his activity.

There is a pleasure in the pathless woods there is a rapture on the lonely shore there is society where none intrudes by the deep sea and music in its roar.

Full many a gem of purest ray serene the dark unfathomed caves of ocean bear full many a flower is born to blush unseen and waste its sweetness on the desert air.

In reading a classical poet we feel as if we had entered a marble temple where a cool silence reigns a few quiet statues gleam around us pure and naked a few short inscriptions tell of the deeds of heroes all is calm grand and simple to the highest perfection of art.

Genius mental power has surrounded your homes with comfort it has given you the command of the blind forces of matter it has exalted and consecrated your affections it has brought God's immeasurable universe nearer to your hearts and imaginations it has made flowers of paradise spring up even in poor men's gardens.

LESSON LIII.

VARIETIES OF COMPOUND SENTENCES.

§ 53. One or more of the members of a compound sentence may be a complex sentence.

§ 54. Either of the clauses of a complex sentence may be a compound sentence.

§ 55. When either of the clauses of a complex sentence, or of the members of a compound sentence, is broken into fragments by interstitial or subordinate interclausal points, the greater interclausal point should be elevated, if a comma, into a semicolon; if a semicolon, into a colon; in order to mark out clearly the construction of the entire sentence.

EXAMPLES.—Melissa, like the bee, gathers honey from every weed;⁵⁵ while Arachne, like the spider, sucks poison from the fairest flowers.

Music should be cultivated,³⁵ because it is an innocent and refining entertainment;⁵⁵ but it should not be allowed to engross the whole mind of a man,³⁵ which was made for nobler employment.

When we combat error with force,¹⁴ or fraud,¹⁴ or sophistry;⁵⁵ we err more than those whom we attack,⁵² and retard the cause of truth.

§ 56. Wherever the observance of the foregoing rule would defeat the very object of it, that is, render the sentence more obscure, it must not be insisted on.

§ 57. When the members of a compound sentence would have, when fully expressed, any element in common, they may, by omitting the repetition of the common element, be combined into a shorter sentence, called a *partial compound sentence*.

§ 58. The parts of a partial compound sentence are separated by commas, only requiring a semicolon when the rule in § 55 would apply.

EXAMPLE.—Highlands replenish,⁵⁸ lowlands exhaust,⁵⁸ the stock of human life.

§ 59. Both a compound and a complex sentence may be contracted by an ellipsis; omitting from one member or clause, some term that may be easily supplied from the other.

§ 60. An ellipsis in a compound sentence is generally indicated by a comma; an ellipsis in a complex sentence rarely requires a comma.

EXAMPLES.—A wise man seeks to shine in himself;⁵¹ a fool,⁶⁰ to outshine others.

Rashness is the error of youth;⁵¹ timid caution,⁶⁰ of age.

Your patrons will soon become dissatisfied,³⁷ if⁶⁰ not so⁶⁰ already.

Can you,²⁴ with your logic,²⁴ persuade more people than he,⁶⁰ with his eloquence?

EXERCISES TO BE PUNCTUATED.

The first ingredient in conversation is truth the next good sense the third good humor and the fourth wit.

A pictured landscape recalls a familiar scene and a portrait a familiar countenance.

Talent is full of thoughts genius of thought. One has definite acquisitions the other indefinite power.

Addison taught the intellect and fancy and Richardson the passions to move at the command of virtue.

To mourn without measure is folly not to mourn at all insensibility.

The young are slaves to novelty the old to custom the middle-aged to both the dead to neither.

Custom respects things which are done by the majority habit those which are done by individuals.

A man's true prosperity often begins when he is said to be ruined and his ruin when he is said to be prospering.

Delicacy leans more to feeling correctness more to reason and judgment. The former is the gift of nature the latter more the product of culture and art.

Hurry is the mark of a weak mind dispatch of a strong one.

When we look up to heaven, and behold the sun shining in glory or the moon and the stars walking in brightness untaught nature prompts us to adore Him who made them to bow down and worship in the temple not made with hands.

Wordsworth in his poetry works out wisdom as it comes from the common heart of man, and appeals to that heart in turn causing us to recognize the truth that there is something in humanity which deserves alike our love and reverence.

The most precious of all possessions is power over ourselves power to withstand trial to bear suffering to front danger power over pleasure and pain power to follow our convictions however resisted by menace and scorn the power of calm reliance in scenes of darkness and storms.

As we trust the long-tried affection of a human friend when for reasons satisfactory to him he now and then withholds from us his ultimate purposes so pious souls acquiescing in ignorance and conscious of absolute dependence on the Parent Mind dissolve their fears and their doubts in perfect faith.

There cold and lifeless is the heart which just now was the seat of friendship there dim and sightless is the eye whose radiant and enlivening orb beamed with intelligence and there closed forever are those lips on whose persuasive accents we have so often and so lately hung with transport.

A year is much in human life particularly to the very young and very old.

The first indications of genius disclose themselves at a very early period.

Follow the perfections of your enemies rather than the errors of your friends.

Christianity represents physical evil as the direct appointment of God's love.

The active mind of man seldom or never rests satisfied with its present condition how prosperous soever.

The saint owes much of the grace and elegance of his spirit to the influences of sorrow in some form.

We can not bid farewell to so large a portion of human history without deep and earnest thought.

Herbert always attracted friends and strangers by the elegance and benignity of his manners.

Law should not be the rich man's luxury, but the poor man's remedy.

Let your affections be cultivated with ardor and purity through all the successive periods of life.

Shake not the credit of others in endeavoring to establish your own.

Half of what passes among men for talent is nothing but strong health.

Who can look on this scene without an increase of love and reverence and trust.

The soul is nursed for heaven by the discipline of a sacred sorrow.

Some men put on the appearance of virtue in order to succeed in their nefarious enterprises.

Let us not think of the departed as looking on us with earthly partial affections.

Is there any splendor to be found in distant travels beyond that which sits its morning throne in the golden east; any dome sublimer than that of heaven any beauty fairer than that of the verdant and blossoming earth any place, though invested with all the sanctities of old time like that home which is hushed and folded within the embrace of the humblest wall and roof

Happy thrice happy he who relies on the eternity of the soul who believes as the loved fall one after one from his side that they have returned to their native country who feels that each treasure of knowledge he attains he carries with him through illimitable being who sees in virtue the essence and the element of the world he is to inherit.

The Pyrrhonists not only doubted of every thing they saw and heard but of their own existence.

A lofty rectitude marked every small as well as every great action of Washington's life.

The treasures of wisdom are not to be seized with a violent hand but to be earned by persevering labor.

Those who flatter the prejudices of others are the enemies not the friends of the improvement and happiness of mankind.

God's love to us is not a technical dogma but a living and practical truth.

Christianity may harmonize with but it needs not the sanction of philosophy.

Knowledge is conducive if not essential to all the ends of virtue.

Most of Homer's defects may reasonably be imputed not to his genius but to the manners of the age in which he lived.

The great object of education is not to store the mind with knowledge but to give activity and vigor to its powers.

Motives of the most sincere though fanciful devotion induced the old man to renew the half-defaced inscriptions on the tombs of his ancestors.

The missionary went forth not only with the wisdom of the serpent but with the simplicity of the dove to do battle against every form of error and vice.

There are men whose powers operate in leisure and in retirement and whose intellectual vigor deserts them in conversation whom merriment confuses and objection disconcerts whose bashfulness restrains their exertion and suffers them not to speak till the time for speaking is past or whose attention to their own character makes them unwilling to utter at hazard what has not been considered and can not be recalled.

If thou hast never tasted the holy peace which descends into the simplest heart when it fervently realizes the presence of God if no gleam from the future life ever brightens thy earthly way if the sores and irritations of thy contact with the world are never soothed and softened by the healing consciousness of a divine love thou hast studied to little purpose, and the fountains of a true happiness are yet sealed up to thee.

That benevolence which prompted Jesus to incessant exertion which supported him through unparalleled suffering which was alike the soul of his discourses his actions and his miracles which shone through his life and his death whose splendors were around his brow when he expired on the cross and when he sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high is but a glorious revelation of the glorious truth that God is love.

The only distinctions in society which should be recognized are those of the soul of strong principle of incorruptible integrity of usefulness of cultivated intellect of fidelity in seeking for truth.

Do the voice of the wise and the arm of the brave and the blood of the patriot go for nothing in the wild conflict that is desolating the earth

Can we imagine that God's highest gift of intelligence imagination and moral power were bestowed to provide only for animal wants

Want and anxiety and habitual discontent and hate of fancied oppression can never raise a class and excite it to noble efforts.

How often in surveying the great man's splendid mansion and wandering through his ancient woods and beautiful gardens have we met with some touching memorial of human affection

The pure kind trustful heart intent on duty and only ambitious of usefulness bears in the beaming eye and open brow and gladsome voice unfailing evidence of inward peace and joy.

That fortitude which has encountered no dangers that prudence which has surmounted no difficulties that integrity which has been attended by no temptations can at best be considered but as gold not yet brought to the test.

Every one must of course think his own opinions right for if he thought them wrong they would no longer be his opinions but there is a wide difference between regarding ourselves as infallible and being firmly convinced of the truth of our creed.

He sunk to repose where the red heaths are blended one dream of his childhood his fancy passed o'er but his battles are fought and his march it is ended the sound of the bagpipe shall wake him no more.

How many things are there which a man can not with any face or comeliness say to himself A man can scarce allege his own merits with modesty much less extol them a man can not sometimes brook to supplicate or beg and a number of the like but all these things are graceful in a friend's mouth which are blushing in a man's own.

LESSON LIV.

THE USE OF THE DASH.

§ 61. Wherever a sentence is broken, unfinished, or finished in a way different from what the beginning would naturally lead to, a dash should be used.

EXAMPLES.—But, my good lord—⁶¹.

Was there ever a bolder captain of a more valiant band? Was there ever—⁶¹ but I scorn to boast.

Leonidas, Cato, Phocion, Tell,—⁶¹ one peculiarity marks them all: they dared and suffered for their native land.

Greece, Rome, Carthage—⁶¹ where are they?

§ 62. The dash is used in narratives of conversations to indicate a change in the speaker; also a pause of some length in the speech of one person.

EXAMPLES.—I pause for a reply—⁶² None? then, etc.

"What!" exclaimed I, from the depths of my starvation, "nothing else? Have n't you any eggs?"—⁶² "No."—⁶² "Any cutlets?"—⁶² "No."—⁶² "Any potatoes?"—⁶² Ever the same reply, "No."

"Grindstone,—⁶² cheese,—⁶² cheese,—⁶² grindstone!" muttered Bunker, now evidently puzzled and doubtful.

§ 63. The dash is used before words repeated or added for the sake of explanation or emphasis, or as the result of a sudden thought of the speaker.

EXAMPLES.—And bid her (you mark me!) on next Wednesday—⁶³ but stop! what day is this?

He had no malice in his mind—⁶³

No ruffles on his shirt.

Newton was a Christian;—⁶³ Newton! whose mind burst forth from the fetters cast by nature on our finite conceptions.

Yes, the poor boy, the friendless Sam, with whom our story began, had become the famous Doctor Samuel Johnson!—⁶³ Johnson! universally acknowledged as the wisest man and the greatest writer in England.

§ 64. The dash is used when a long series of co-ordinate terms, clauses, or phrases is all to be summed up into one common connection with the final clause of the sentence.

EXAMPLES.—The infinity of worlds, and the narrow spot of earth which we call our country or our home; the eternity of ages, and the few hours of life; the almighty power of God, and human nothingness,—⁶⁴ it is impossible to think of these in succession, without a feeling like that which is produced by the sublimest eloquence.

At school and at college, the great vision of Rome broods over the mind with a power which is never suspended or disputed: her

great men, her beautiful legends, her history, the height to which she rose, and the depth to which she fell,—⁶⁴these make up one half of a student's ideal world.

§ 65. The dash is commonly used where there is an ellipsis of such words as *namely*, *that is*, and others having a similar import.

EXAMPLES.—The four greatest names in English poetry are almost the first we come to,—⁶⁵Chaucer, Spencer, Shakespeare, and Milton.

Nicholas Copernicus was instructed in that seminary where it is always happy when any one can be well taught,—⁶⁵the family circle.

Gray and Collins aimed at the dazzling imagery and magnificence of lyric poetry,—⁶⁵the direct antipodes of Pope.

EXERCISES TO BE PUNCTUATED.

"I forgot my" "Your portmanteau" hastily interrupted Henry.
"The same."

To reward men according to their worth alas the perfection of this we know amounts to the millennium.

Thou dost not mean No no thou wouldst not have me make a trial of my skill upon my child!

At church in silks and satins new with hoop of monstrous size she never slumbered in her pew but when she shut her eyes.

"Please your honor" quoth Trim "the Inquisition is the vilest"
"Prithee spare thy description Trim I hate the very name of it"
said my father.

Frankness suavity tenderness benevolence breathed through their exercise. And his family But he is gone that noble heart beats no more.

The collision of mind with mind the tug and strain of intellectual wrestling the tension of every mental fiber as the student reaches forth to take hold of the topmost pinnacle of thought the shout of joy that swells up from gladsome voices as he stands upon the summit with error under his feet these make men.

The modest flower nestling in the meadow-grass the happy tree as it laughs and riots in the wind the moody cloud knitting its brow in solemn thought the river that has been flowing all night long the sound of the thirsty earth as it drinks and relishes the rain these

things are as a full hymn when they flow from the melody of nature but an empty rhythm when scanned by the finger of art.

Angry thoughts canker the mind and dispose it to the worst temper in the world that of fixed malice and revenge.

There are two kinds of evils those which can not be cured and those which can.

I see in this world two heaps one of happiness and the other of misery.

Amongst us men these three things are a large part of our virtue to endure to forgive and ourselves to get pardon.

The orations of Cæsar were admired for two qualities which are seldom found together strength and elegance.

In 1813 Moore entered upon his noble poetical and patriotic task writing lyrics for the ancient music of his native country.

Milton's life was a true poem or it might be compared to an anthem on his own favorite organ high-toned solemn and majestic.

Faith builds in the dungeon and the lazar-house its sublimest shrines and up through roofs of stone that shut up the eye of Heaven ascends the ladder where the angels glide to and fro Prayer.

You speak like a boy like a boy who thinks the old gnarled oak can be twisted as easily as the young sapling.

Never is virtue left without sympathy sympathy dearer and tenderer for the misfortune that has tried it and proved its fidelity.

There are indeed I acknowledge to the honor of the human kind there are persons in the world who feel that the possession of good dispositions is their best reward.

All great discoveries not purely accidental will be gifts to insight and the true man of science will be he who can best ascend into the thoughts of God he who burns before the throne in the clearest purest mildest light of reason.

Man is led to the conception of a Power and an Intelligence superior to his own and adequate to the production and maintenance of all that he sees in nature a Power and Intelligence to which he may well apply the term "infinite."

Can Parliament be so dead to its dignity and duty as to give its sanction to measures thus obtruded and forced upon them measures my lords which have reduced this late flourishing kingdom to scorn and contempt.

Then I told what a tall upright graceful person their great-grandmother Field once was and how in her youth she was esteemed the best dancer here Alice's little right foot played an involuntary

movement till upon my looking grave it desisted the best dancer I was saying in the country till a cruel disease called a cancer came and bowed her down with pain, but it could never bend her good spirits or make them stoop but they were still upright because she was so good and religious.

He hears the raven's cry and shall he not hear and will he not avenge the wrongs that his nobler animals suffer wrongs that cry out against man from youth to age in the city and in the field by the way and by the fireside.

Wherever on this earth an understanding is active to know and serve the truth wherever a heart beats with kind and pure and generous affections wherever a home spreads its sheltering wing over husband and wife and parent and child there under every diversity of outward circumstance the true worth and dignity and peace of man's soul are within reach of all.

When at God's decree human greatness from all its state falls to the ground like a leaf when death usually doing its work in silence seems to cry out over the bier of the high and distinguished when some figure that has moved with imposing tread in our sight towers still more out of the dark valley when the drapery of mourning unrolls itself from private chambers to line the streets darken the windows and hang the heavens in black when the stroke of the bell adds a sabbath solemnity to the days of the week and the boom of guns better fired over the dead than at the living echoes all through our territory, while the wheels of business stop and labor leans its head and trade foregoes its gains, and communication save on one theme ceases we may well ask the meaning and cause.

LESSON LV.

QUOTATION MARKS.

§ 66. A word, phrase, or passage, uttered or written by another, and introduced into one's own composition, is distinguished by marks of quotation.

§ 67. Marks of quotation need not be used if the phraseology of the author is changed, so as to be incorporated in the sentence as a part of it.

§ 68. But it is not wrong to use them, including such of the words as are not changed by the incorporation, if the writer wishes the reader to notice that the expression is a borrowed or quoted one.

§ 69. If one quotation is included within another, the interior one is marked by a single inverted comma at the beginning, and a single apostrophe at the end. If the interior quotation contains still another, the marks are doubled again.

§ 70. When the quotation extends through several paragraphs of prose, or stanzas of poetry, the double inverted commas stand at the beginning of each paragraph or stanza, and the double apostrophes at the end of the last only.

§ 71. If the quoted poetry is not broken into stanzas, a single inverted comma stands at the beginning of each line.

§ 72. If the quotation is introduced by some such words as *thus*, *following*, *as follows*, *these words*, etc., it should be preceded by a colon.

§ 73. If the quotation is preceded by such words as those mentioned in the foregoing rule, and is broken from the preceding part of the discourse so as to begin a new paragraph, it should also be preceded by a dash after the colon.

EXAMPLES.—A minister of some experience remarks, 66 "I have heard more than one sufferer say, 69 'I am thankful; God is good to me;' 69 and, when I heard that, I said, 69 'It is good to be afflicted.' " 69, 66

I was struck with this sentence: 72—73 66 "Channing, the friend of humanity in every condition and under every garb, says, 69 'When I consider the greater simplicity of their lives, and their greater openness to the spirit of Christianity, I am not sure but that the 69 "golden age" 69 of manners is to begin among those who are now despaired of for their want of refinement.' " 69, 66

EXERCISES.

Let the pupil insert quotation-marks where demanded by the rules in the following sentences, and tell by what rules the other points are inserted, and likewise by what rules the capitals occur.

If, says Sir James Mackintosh, you display the delights of liberality to a miser, he may always shut your mouth by answering, The spendthrift may prefer such pleasures: I love money more.

Johnson's *Lives of the English Poets* may justly be considered as the noblest specimen of elegant and solid criticism which any age has produced.

Terrific examples of license and anarchy in Greece and Rome are quoted to prove that man requires to be protected from himself; forgetting the profound wisdom wrapped up in the familiar inquiry, *Quis custodiet ipsos custodes?* Who shall guard the keepers?

An eloquent preacher asks, Who would not far prefer our wintry storm, and the hoarse sighings of the east wind, as it sweeps around us, if they will brace the mind to nobler attainments, and the heart to better duties? [The author of this passage quotes the phrase, "the hoarse sighings of the east wind."]

I ventured to congratulate him on his coming back to his home. Ah, sir! he answered, but to a home how altered!—my family broken up, my kindred gone, my mother vanished unseen!—These feelings about home are deep, I murmured forth, as he came to an embarrassing pause.—Very deep, sir, he rejoined, and walked away.

What is the soul? was a question once put to Marivaux.—I know nothing of it, he answered, but that it is spiritual and immortal.—Well, said his friend, let us ask Fontenelle, and he will tell us what it is.—No, cried Marivaux: ask any body but Fontenelle; for he has too much good sense to know any more about it than we do.

D'Alembert congratulated a young man very coldly, who brought him the solution of a problem. I have done this to have a seat in the Academy, said the young man.—Sir, answered D'Alembert, with such motives you will never earn one. Science must be loved for its own sake, and not for the advantage to be derived. No other principle will enable a man to make true progress.

The following sarcastic rules for behavior are said by Goldsmith to have been drawn up by an indigent philosopher:—

1. If you be a rich man, you may enter the room with three loud hems, march deliberately up to the chimney, and turn your back to the fire.

2. If you be a poor man, I would advise you to shrink into the room as fast as you can, and place yourself, as usual, upon a corner of a chair, in a remote corner.

3. If you be young, and live with an old man, I would advise you not to like gravy. I was disinherited myself for liking gravy.

LESSON LVI.

THE STYLE OF LETTERS.

§ 74. The style of all letters should be characterized by simplicity. All attempts at rhetorical display in a communication so personal and private as a letter, are in exceedingly bad taste.

§ 75. All letters of business should be characterized by the utmost politeness, and by strict adherence to the matter in hand. This should always be set forth in the clearest manner consistent with brevity. Some persons very properly pursue the plan of stating, in their reply to a letter of business, the substance of the letter to which they are replying. Whenever there is the least danger of being misunderstood, this should certainly be done. The following are examples of the mode in which this should be done.

CHATTANOOGA, Sept. 10, 1870.

MESSRS. HARRIS & BRO'S.

Gentlemen,

Yours of the 7th inst., proposing to send us 10 hhds. Syrup on sale, is received. We have considered your offer, and agree, &c., &c.

MEMPHIS, Oct. 5th, 1870.

GEORGE SLOAN, ESQ.

Dear Sir,

Yours of the 3d inst. is received, and its contents are noted. You inquire if I hold the title-deed to the lot of land, No. 152, in Gibson County of this State.

§ 76. As to letters of friendship, the very best rule is for the writer to imagine that he is allowed the privilege of a short interview with his friend, and then to insert in his letters those matters which would naturally be mentioned in such an interview. The style should be clear, simple, and conversational; sprightly or humorous, perhaps, but never flippant or silly. Whatever freedom or familiarity be used, no error in spelling, grammar, or style, no slovenliness in penmanship, should be tolerated in a letter. Egotism should be avoided, and yet one must not forget that the principal interest that friends have in their correspondence consists in the fact that it is the only means by which they are to be informed each of the other's fortunes and feelings. Backbiting, the repeating of evil rumors about mutual acquaintances, or the revealing of what has been mentioned in confidence, are all as wicked and as mean in letters as in conversation. With these limitations, let the heart dictate the matter. Be *yourself* unto your friend. Pour out your soul unto him, and invite similar openness from him, and your letters will glow with interest and beauty.

LESSON LVII.

QUESTIONS FOR REVIEW—No. II.

What is discourse? What is continuous discourse? What is continuous discourse in script?

What is the difference between a hyphen and a dash? What are the uses of the hyphen? What are the uses of the dash? (See Lesson LIV.)

How do prose and poetry differ as to the use of capitals? Repeat the nine rules for the use of capitals.

What is didactic discourse? What is derivation? What is a primitive word? What is a radical? What is a prefix? What is a suffix? What is inflection? Which are the seven inflectional

suffixes in English? What is the use of each of them? When is the suffix *s* changed into *es*? What change is made when a suffix beginning with a vowel is added to a radical ending with silent *e*? When is the final letter of a radical doubled on taking a suffix? How do radicals ending in *y* take suffixes? What change takes place when the suffix *ing* is to be added to a radical ending in *ie*?

What is meant by the style of a person? What are the two elements of style? To what does each refer? Which are the five properties of good diction? To what does propriety of diction refer? When is a person's style said to be proper? Why are improprieties so often made in the use of prepositions? What are paronyms? Why are they liable to be improperly used?

When is the style of a writer said to be pure? What is a barbarism? Where is the English language spoken? What is a provincialism? When is it a barbarism to use a foreign word in English discourse? What is an obsolete word? Why are some obsolete words found in the Sacred Scriptures? What difference is there between the diction of poetry and prose in the use of obsolete words? Who has the right to make a new word and use it? When is a word said to be anglicized? What are the chief sources from which the English language is now being enriched by the addition of new words? Why have you not the right to coin a word? When may you venture to use a new word that others have coined, or an obsolete word that others have revived? Is it allowable to make up a word of parts derived from different languages?

Which are the four parts of a letter? Where should the date be placed, and what should it contain? State the rules concerning the form of the address. State the rules concerning the subscription.

What is meant by chastity of diction? What is vulgarism? What are colloquialisms? What is slang?

What is meant by precision of diction? What are redundancies? What is pleonasm? What is tautology?

What is meant by euphony of diction? What kind of words are those which do not sound well?

What is a simple sentence? What is the rule for the pointing of a plain straight-forward simple sentence? When is a comma required between the subject and the verb? What are the rules for the pointing of appositives? What of secondary or attributive objects? What of an adjective or participle phrase following the noun?

What are the rules for the punctuation of compound terms? What are the three exceptions to the rule requiring transpositions to

be marked by commas? When should a preposition have a comma before it? What is a parenthesis, and how should it be marked? What is an interposed word or phrase, and how should it be marked? How should independent and contextual words be marked? When should the exclamation be used? How are responsive words marked? What are the rules for the pointing of enumerations?

What is a complex sentence? What is a restrictive clause? What is the general rule for the pointing of a complex sentence? What are the four exceptions to it? In what four cases are the exceptions overruled?

What is a compound sentence? By what may its members be connected? What are the rules for the punctuation of compound sentences? What rule applies when a sentence is both complex and compound? What is a partial compound sentence? How is it to be punctuated? What is the rule for the pointing of an ellipsis?

What are the rules for the use of the dash? What are the rules for the use of quotation-marks?

What kind of style should characterize letters in general? By what should letters of business be characterized? What particular item should every letter of business contain? What is the best mode of finding what to say in a letter of friendship? What kind of style should letters of friendship have? What ethical rules are given as to the matter of letters of friendship?

DIRECTIONS TO THE TEACHER.

A PLAN FOR GUIDING A CLASS IN LEARNING TO WRITE ORIGINAL ESSAYS.

The great difficulty with young persons in the production of original essays, is the want of information. A subject is assigned them concerning which they know little or nothing, or about which they have no opinions. In such circumstances the temptation is almost irresistible to resort to dishonest methods of producing a composition. Even if time be allowed them to "read up" on a subject, to become "posted," as the phrase goes, yet the knowledge thus obtained is not, in any proper sense, their own, and but few young persons would take the trouble, or have the patience, to meditate alone upon it, so as to form opinions of their own about it. To this undertaking they must be helped by the teacher. The following are the details of a plan that has long been tried by some teachers, and with such success as to warrant its recommendation to others.

Let a subject be selected and assigned, and let a sufficient time be allowed for the pupils to gather some information concerning it.

By a certain day, each pupil is required to present a number of questions, say five, six, or more, calling for leading facts, or for opinions based upon the facts in connection with the subject assigned.

These questions are collated by the teacher, the duplicates and unimportant ones thrown out, and the rest arranged, numbered, and distributed among the members of the class, irrespective of their authorship.

It is now the business of each one to qualify himself by special search, using all available sources, to give full, intelligent, and accurate answers to the questions he has received.

At an appointed time the class is convened to hear these answers. They are called for in the order of the numbers given to the distributed questions. Each pupil, as the number of any of his assigned questions is called, rises, reads the question, and proceeds to give the answer orally, in a clear and connected manner. This part of the process is an invaluable exercise in the way of training young persons to converse, or if need be, to speak in public.

After the answer has been made, the question is open for further inquiry, explanation, confirmation, or objection, from all the class; and the teacher should see to it that no question be passed over until all the class is informed about it, and have been led to make up some opinion or opinions on the point brought out by the question.

The teacher should take care not to repress discussion by his own authoritative utterances; but rather encourage individual freedom of thought to the utmost.

The discussion need not be held to the strict order of a debate. After the first two or three speeches, if they may be called so, are made on the point, let the class, if so disposed, resolve itself without form into two or more conversational groups, and talk over the point among themselves.

But no one point should be allowed to occupy a large share of the time. It is best not to let the members of the class *talk* out all they might say on any topic. The discussion will have produced its desired effect, if it suggest to the pupils a great many things that they would like to say, if time were given them.

At the close of the discussion, the precise subject of the composition is assigned. It may be just the same that the pupils were required to write questions upon, or it may be something merely connected with the subject. For instance, suppose the topic on which questions have been prepared and answered is *Martin Luther*; the teacher may assign that as the subject of an essay to each member

of the class alike, or he may vary it somewhat for different individuals.

A. may be required to write Reflections on visiting the town of Eisleben, where Luther was born and died.

B. may be required to write out a Parallel between the characters of Luther and Wesley.

C. may be required to write an imaginary Discourse of Luther's, inveighing against the sale of indulgences.

D. may be required to write an imaginary Extract from the funeral sermon of Justus Jonas on the death of Luther.

E. may be required to write an imaginary Letter of Luther's to Melancthon, while confined in the Castle of Wartburg.

F. may be required to describe an imaginary Visit to the household of Luther on a Christmas Eve.

Of course, in assigning such special performances as these, the teacher will have respect to the age and ability of the pupils.

When the essays are written, each should be subjected to careful revision and correction, and the corrected copies should be read before the assembled class.

It is hoped that this plan will commend itself to all teachers in circumstances to adopt it.

APPENDIX II.

ENGLISH SYNONYMS.

TAKEN FROM LYND'S CLASS BOOK OF ETYMOLOGY.

- ABANDON**—desert, forsake; leave, give up, cast off, quit; renounce, resign, relinquish, reject, surrender, abdicate, yield, cede, concede, forego. *See Give up, Leave, Cast back.*
- ABANDONED**—reprobate, profligate, corrupt, depraved, vitiated, vicious, wicked; lorn, forlorn, left, forsaken; deserted, helpless, destitute, lost, desperate, hopeless; outcast, cast off. *See Wicked, Hopeless, Loose.*
- ABASE**—depress, cast down, debase, disgrace, lower, make low; humble, humiliate, reduce. *See Lower, Disgrace, Humble.*
- ABHOR**—hate, detest, abominate, loathe. *See Disgust.*
- ABIDE**—stay, continue, remain; endure, last. *See Stay, Lasting.*
- ABILITY**—capacity, capability, capableness, cleverness, competence, competency, adequacy, adequateness, sufficiency, efficiency; skill, tact, address, dexterity; genius, talent, faculty, power. *See Power.*
- ABLE**—capable, competent, adequate, sufficient, efficient, qualified, skillful, clever, expert, adroit, dexterous; powerful, strong, vigorous. *See Powerful, Active, Clever, Strong, Inadequate.*
- ABODE**—habitation, dwelling, residence, domicil, house; *for a short time*, visit, sojourn, sojourning. *See House.*
- ABOUNDING**—sufficient, copious, abundant, overflowing, ample, plentiful, plenteous, fertile; prevailing, prevalent; exuberant. *See Fruitful, Enough, Generous, Excess, Large.*
- ABRIDGE**—abbreviate, compress, contract, epitomize, condense; reduce, curtail, shorten. *See Take.*
- ABRIDGMENT**—compendium, compend, abstract, synopsis, epitome, summary, abbreviation; contraction, diminution, reduction. *See Shorter.*
- ABRUPT**—sudden, unlooked for, unexpected, unforeseen; rough, rude, coarse; uneven, rugged; steep, craggy, precipitous; unconnected. *See Bold, Sudden.*
- ABSTAIN**—refrain, forbear, withhold, desist, discontinue, hold off, cease, stop. *See Keep, Leave.*
- ABSTAINING**—abstinent, abstemious, sober, temperate, moderate. *See Sober.*
- ABUSE**—scurrility, invective, vituperation, opprobrium, insult, insolence, reproach.
- ABUSE**—revile, reproach, vilify, vituperate, insult; scurrilize, inveigh against, declaim, upbraid, chide, scandalize; ill-use, deceive, impose on. *See Chide, Gibe, Beguile, Misuse, Injure, Reproach, Deceive.*
- ABUSIVE**—opprobrious, scurrilous, insulting, insolent, scandalous, reproachful, vituperative, offensive, injurious. *See Hurtful.*
- ACCENT**—emphasis, stress.
- ACCIDENTAL**—fortuitous; casual, contingent, incidental, adventitious, adscititious, appendant, annexed, non-essential. *See Additional.*

- ACCOMPANYING**—attending, going with, concomitant, connected, conjoined, concurrent, collateral. *See* Connected.
- ACCOMPLICE**—accessory, abettor, confrere, colleague, partner, associate, companion; ally, confederate, assistant. *See* Companion.
- ACCOMPLISH**—effect, effectuate, achieve, do, execute, perform, complete, realize, fulfill. *See* Do, Perfect, Bring about, Compass.
- ACCOMPLISHMENT**—performance, execution, achievement, effectuation, fulfillment, completion, realization; acquisition, acquirement, attainment. *See* Performance, Completion, Work.
- ACCOMPLISHMENTS**—refinements, embellishments, elegancies; endowments; qualifications, attainments, acquirements. *See* Qualification.
- ACCORDANT**—agreeing with, concordant, consonant, consistent, congruous, compatible, conformable, agreeable, suitable. *See* Agreeable, Suitable, Answerable to.
- ACCOUNT**—description, relation, explanation, narration, narrative, history, story, recital, detail. *See* Chronicle, Memoir.
- ACCOUNTABLE**—responsible, answerable, amenable, subject to, obnoxious, liable. *See* Answerable, Subject.
- ACCUSE**—impeach, indict, charge; arraign; impute to, attribute to. *See* Lay, Count.
- ACID**—*See* Sour.
- ACQUAINT**—apprise, communicate, inform; disclose, reveal; make familiar. *See* Make known, Tell.
- ACQUAINTANCE**—friend, associate, companion; familiar, intimate. *See* Companion, Intimacy, Familiarity.
- ACQUIESCENCE**—quiet assent, resignation, submission; endurance, patience; consent, assent, compliance; accordance, agreement. *See* Agreement, Approbation, Agree to.
- ACT between**—interpose, intercede; mediate, intermediate; meddle, intermeddle, interfere. *See* Interrupt.
- ACTIVE**—expert, dexterous, adroit, alert, vigorous, strenuous, agile, nimble, brisk, lively, animated, sprightly, quick, prompt, ready; industrious, diligent, assiduous, sedulous; practical, operative. *See* Lively, Quick, Ready, Diligent, Able, Effect producing.
- ACTUAL**—real, true, authentic, certain, genuine, positive; incontestible, unquestionable, irrefragable, irrefutable, undoubted, indubitable. *See* Doubted, *not to be*, Certain, Genuine, Positive.
- ADDITION**—something added; additament; accession, increase, augment, augmentation, accretion; appendix, appendage, supplement; annexation; addenda. *See* Increase.
- ADDITIONAL**—supplemental, supplementary, adventitious, adscititious, supernumerary, supervenient; added, superadded, appended, appendant, annexed, affixed, attached. *See* Accidental.
- ADDUCE**—cite, quote. *See* Call.
- ADORN**—*See* Beautify.
- ADVANCEMENT**—progression, progress; preferment, promotion; proficiency, improvement; forwardness. *See* Improvement.
- ADVERSARY**—opponent, antagonist, opposer, combatant, Satan, foe, enemy.
- ADVICE**—counsel, information, instruction; notice, intelligence; deliberation, consultation. *See* Caution, Knowledge.
- AFFECTING**—moving, touching, pathetic, tender; exciting the passions or affections; impressive; pitiable. *See* Pitiable.
- AFFECTION**—attachment, fondness, kindness, devotion, devotedness; regard, love. *See* Kindness, Attachment.
- AFFECTIONATE**—loving, kind, fond, warm, tender. *See* Warm, Kind, Loving, Hearty.
- AFFRONT**—insult, indignity, outrage; provocation, irritation, exasperation; ill-treatment, abuse. *See* Injury, Offend, Abuse.
- AFFRONTING**—insulting, provoking, irritating, exasperating, aggravating; apt to affront; petulant, hasty, irritable. *See* Impertinent, Invidious.
- AFRAID**—timid, timorous, fearful; pusillanimous, dastardly, cowardly. *See* Fearful, Cowardice.
- AFRAID, be**—apprehend, fear, dread. *See* Fear.
- AGITATION**—commotion, striving; disturbance, perturbation, excitement; emo-

- tion, trepidation, tremor; discussion. *See* Fear, Stir, Trouble, Trembling.
- AGREE to**—comply, accede, consent, assent, acquiesce, approve, accord, conform. *See* Approve.
- AGREE with**—harmonize, be consistent, acquiesce, coincide, concur.
- AGREEABLE**—pleasant, pleasing, gratifying, delightful, delectable; acceptable, grateful, welcome; accordant. *See* Accordant, Becoming, Suitable, Amiable, Grateful.
- AGREEABLE, not**—inconsistent, incongruous, incompatible, unsuitable, discordant, incoherent.
- AGREEMENT**—accordance, concurrence, union, unison, harmony; contract, covenant, convention, compact, bargain, stipulation, truce, peace, treaty. *See* Acquiescence, Concord, League, Bargain, Disagreement, Arrangement, Communion.
- AID**—*See* Assist.
- AIM**—purpose, purport, intention, design, object, end, tendency, drift, scope; wish, aspiration, desire. *See* Direction, Desire, End, Object, Meaning.
- AIM**—strive to hit a mark; direct, point, level; aspire to, pretend to; endeavor, seek. *See* Seek, Wish for.
- ALL**—*See* Whole.
- ALLAY**—calm, quiet, tranquilize, soothe, compose, appease, soften, relieve, alleviate, mitigate, abate, diminish, assuage. *See* Ease, Lessen, Soft, Still.
- ALLIANCE**—connection, affinity, league, confederacy, treaty, compact; combination. *See* League, Company.
- ALLOW**—suffer, permit, tolerate; concede, admit, grant. *See* Grant, Give, Suffer, Support, Own.
- ALLURE**—*See* Tempt.
- ALMIGHTY**—all-powerful, omnipotent. *See* All, Able, Powerful.
- ALONE**—*See* One, Single.
- ALONE**—solitary, desolate, desert, forlorn, retired, remote, sole, single, lonely, only. *See* Lonely, Desolate, Solitary.
- ALWAYS**—incessantly, ever, perpetually, continually, constantly; unchangeably, immutably, unalterably, irrevocably. *See* Changeable.
- AMENDS**—compensation, reparation, restitution, requital, atonement, satisfaction. *See* Restoring, Satisfaction, Pay.
- AMENDS, make**—compensate, recompense, remunerate, reward; repair, satisfy, requite, atone. *See* Expiate, Reward Satisfy.
- AMiable**—lovely, sweet, gentle, kind, soft, obliging; pleasing, charming, fascinating, enchanting, accomplished, attractive, prepossessing, engaging, agreeable, delightful, admirable. *See* Obliging Charm, Agreeable.
- AMUSING**—diverting, entertaining, beguiling, interesting, sportive, recreating; droll, comical, comic, ludicrous, farcical, ridiculous. *See* Laughable, Odd, Sport, Beguile.
- ANCESTOR**—progenitor, forefather, predecessor. *See* Old.
- ANCIENT**—*See* Old.
- ANGER**—wrath, resentment, dudgeon, ire, irritation, irritability, indignation, exasperation, excitement, displeasure, disapprobation; choler, rage, passion, spleen. *See* Displeasure, Rage, Malice.
- ANGER**—incense, irritate, enrage, exasperate, heat, kindle, enkindle, inflame, fire, incite, stimulate, provoke, excite. *See* Displease, Burn, Stir, Heighten.
- ANGRY**—irritated, incensed, exasperated, vexed, excited; irascible, ireful, wrath, choleric, passionate, hot, hasty, impetuous; inflamed, red; raging, furious, tumultuous, provoked. *See* Hot, Fretful, Cross, Passionate, Hasty, Tumultuous.
- ANIMATE**—enliven, quicken, invigorate, inspire, exhilarate; instigate, incite, inspire, embolden, encourage, impel, stimulate, urge, move, actuate. *See* Cheer, Quicken, Encourage, Move, Stir.
- ANNUL laws or rules**—do away with, make void, nullify, disannul, cancel, abrogate, abolish, repeal, revoke, recall. *See* Call back, Overrule.
- ANSWERABLE**—accountable, responsible, amenable, liable. *See* Accountable, Subject.
- ANSWERABLE for, be**—guarantee, warrant, secure, be responsible or accountable, be surety or security for, pledge, vouch for. *See* Pledge, Security.
- ANTICIPATE**—precede, prevent, forestall,

- prepossess, foretaste, prejudice, forerun.
See Prevent, Go.
- APHORISM—maxim, axiom, apophthegm, saying, adage, proverb; saw, by-word.
See Say, Speech.
- APPEAL—refer, submit; call on, invoke.
See Refer, Call.
- APPEAR, *make*—manifest, demonstrate, evince; reveal, display, discover; seem, look. *See Discover, Look.*
- APPEARANCE—phenomenon, scene, semblance, show, figure, form, seeming, likeness, resemblance, air, look, manner, aspect; mien, deportment, gait; verisimilitude, probability, likelihood; plausibility, speciousness. *See Form, Aspect, Attitude, Likeness, Show, Ghost.*
- APPEASED, *not to be*—implacable, inexorable, unappeasable, relentless, unrelenting. *See Unrelenting, Deadly.*
- APPLY—lay on; use, employ, adhibit, put, refer; dedicate, devote, assign, allot, apportion; suit, agree; make request, solicit, have recourse, betake. *See Refer, Dedicate, Assign, Ask.*
- APPOINT—ordain, order, depute, prescribe, fix, devote, allot, constitute, institute, provide, apportion, assign, parcel. *See Ordain, Assign, Fix.*
- APPROACH—approximate, draw nigh, come near, draw near. *See Draw, Near.*
- APPROVE—*See Praise.*
- APPROBATION—approval, consent, assent, acquiescence, concurrence. *See Praise, Acquiescence, Leave.*
- ARBITER—*See Judge.*
- ARBITRARY—depending on will or discretion, despotic, tyrannical, imperious, peremptory, positive; absolute, unlimited, unrestrained, unrestricted, optional, discretionary. *See Despotic, Positive.*
- ARGUE—*See Think.*
- ARGUE—dispute, reason, debate, contend, discuss, altercation, controvert, question; prove, evince; expostulate, remonstrate. *See Reason.*
- ARGUMENT—dispute, reasoning, debate, contention, discussion, altercation, disputation, controversy, contest, reason, proof, allegation, evidence; remonstrance, expostulation. *See Proof, Reason, Dissertation.*
- ARM—*See Covering.*
- ARRANGEMENT—symmetry, proportion, adjustment, adaptation; harmony, agreement, accordance. *See Order, Disposition, Agreement.*
- ART, *without*—artless, guileless, ingenuous, candid, open, frank; unaffected, natural. *See Open, Fair.*
- ART, *made by*—artificial, factitious; feigned, fictitious. *See Forged.*
- ASCEND—*See Mount.*
- ASHAMED—*See Modest.*
- ASHAMED, *make*—abash, shame, confound, confuse, disgrace. *See Disgrace, Shame.*
- ASK—request, solicit, entreat, beg, petition, require, claim, crave, demand. *See Invite, Beg, Apply.*
- ASK *questions*—question, interrogate, inquire.
- ASPECT—mien, air, physiognomy, appearance. *See Appearance, Look.*
- ASPERSE—accuse falsely, slander, defame, calumniate, detract, vilify, scandalize. *See Slander, Disgrace.*
- ASSEMBLY—*See Company, Council.*
- ASSERT—vindicate, justify, maintain, aver, affirm positively, defend. *See Declare, Clear.*
- ASSIGN—allot, appoint, grant, designate, fix, specify; make over, transfer, alienate; allege, show, bring forward, advance, adduce, state; devote, apportion, appropriate, set apart. *See Appoint, Ordain, Set apart.*
- ASSIST—aid, succor, relieve, help; conduce, contribute, minister, administer. *See Help, Minister, Support, Oblige.*
- ASSUME, *falsely*—arrogate; usurp; affect, pretend.
- ATONE—*See Expiate.*
- ATTACHMENT—adherence, adhesion; fondness, affection, love, regard, esteem, inclination, addiction; fidelity, faith. *See Affection, Stick.*
- ATTACK—fall upon, assail, assault, impugn, oppose. *See Incursion, Onset.*
- ATTEMPT—effort, endeavor, trial, experiment, essay; enterprise, undertaking. *See Essay, Try, Dare.*
- ATTENTION—stretching to, application, study, devotion, assiduity, diligence; civility, courtesy. *See Diligence, Civility, Politeness.*

- ATTITUDE**—position, figure, posture; action, gesture, gesticulation. *See* Appearance, Form.
- AUDACITY**—boldness, hardihood, impudence, insolence, effrontery. *See* Impudence, Bold.
- AUTHOR**—*See* Writer.
- AUTHORIZE**—give authority, empower; authenticate; instruct, direct, give a right. *See* Invest, Instruct.
- AVARICE**—love of money, avariciousness, covetousness, cupidity. *See* Desire.
- AVERSE**—backward, unwilling, loth, reluctant. *See* Unwilling.
- AVOID**—*See* Shun.
- AWAKEN**—waken, rouse, arouse; incite, excite, stir up, provoke, stimulate. *See* Stir, Move.
- AWARE**—conscious, apprised; watchful, vigilant, guarded, cautious, attentive, wary. *See* Wary, Watchful.
- AWKWARD**—clumsy, unnatural, uncouth, clownish, unpolished, untoward, unhandy, inconvenient, bungling, unready; inelegant, unpolite, ungraceful. *See* Blunt, Barbarous, Polite, Countryman.
- AX**—*See* Weapon.
- BACKWARD**—*See* Averse.
- BACKWARD, go**—retrograde, retrocede, retreat, retire, recede. *See* Go.
- BAD**—*See* Malicious, Wicked.
- BAFFLE**—balk, frustrate, thwart, foil, disappoint. *See* Put down, Defeat.
- BAND**—*See* Tie.
- BAND**—shackle, fetter, manacle, collar, chain, bond, tie, bandage; company, society, association, coalition, league, confederacy; gang; crew. *See* Company, League, Tie.
- BANE**—pest, plague; poison, ruin. *See* Hurt.
- BANISH**—*See* Exile.
- BANISHMENT**—exile, transportation, deportation, expatriation, ostracism; proscription, outlawry, expulsion. *See* Exile.
- BARBAROUS**—uncivilized, rude, savage, vandalic, unlettered, illiterate, untutored, ignorant, barbarian; cruel, ferocious, inhuman, inhospitable. *See* Cruel, Bloody, Ignorant, Awkward.
- BARE**—uncovered, naked, rude, detected; destitute, poor, indigent, empty, unfur-
- nished, deficient, scant, scanty; plain, simple, unadorned. *See* Naked, Poor.
- BARGAIN**—*See* Agreement, League, Condition.
- BARGAIN**—negotiate, treat with; agree, stipulate, contract, covenant, capitulate. *See* Agree, League.
- BARREN**—sterile, effete, unfruitful, unproductive, arid. *See* Idle, Poor.
- BASTARD**—illegitimate, natural; spurious, not genuine, false, supposititious, adulterate. *See* Spurious, Genuine, *not*.
- BATTLE**—fight, conflict, combat, duel, contest, contention, encounter, struggle, engagement, action, rencounter. *See* Fight, Argument, War.
- BEAM**—ray, gleam, glitter. *See* Shine.
- BEAR, bring forth**—*See* Breed.
- BEAR**—suffer, support, endure, tolerate, sustain, undergo, be patient; carry, convey, transport; bring forth, produce, beget. *See* Suffer, Passive, Support, Beget, Produce.
- BEASTLY**—brutal, brutish, bestial; sensual, irrational; coarse, filthy. *See* Brutal.
- BEAT**—*See* Bruise.
- BEAT**—strike, hit, thrash; break, hammer, bruise, pulverize; defeat, conquer, vanquish, subdue, overcome, overthrow, overpower, smite, afflict. *See* Palpitate, Bruise, Overcome, Defeat.
- BEAUTIFUL**—beauteous, pretty, handsome, elegant, fair, graceful, fine; decorated, ornamented, embellished, adorned, ornate, decked; lovely, charming, attractive. *See* Fair, Charming, Amiable, Nice.
- BEAUTIFY**—adorn, decorate, embellish, deck, bedeck, enamel, array, attire, dress, grace, ornament, embroider; gild, polish, refine, smooth, furbish, burnish. *See* Dress, Invest.
- BECOMING**—decent, befitting, suitable, fit, meet; agreeable, graceful, comely. *See* Fit, Meet, Suitable, Polite.
- BEFITTING**—*See* Becoming.
- BEG**—supplicate, beseech, implore, entreat, crave, pray, petition. *See* Ask, Wish for, Entreaty.
- BEGET**—*See* Breed, Cause.
- BEGIN**—commence, take rise, originate; enter on, start, resume. *See* Found, Origin, Preface, Introduce.
- BEGUILE**—delude, deceive, impose on;

- elude; pass pleasingly, divert, amuse, entertain. *See* Deceive, Cheat, Amusing.
- BEHAVIOR**—conduct, demeanor, deportment, carriage, port, manners, address. *See* Manners, Aspect, Appearance.
- BEHEAD**—decapitate, decollate, guillotine. *See* Kill, Head.
- BEHOLD**—*See* Look.
- BELIEF**—faith, credence, credit, trust, confidence; creed. *See* Confidence, Hope, Faithfulness, Unbelief.
- BEMOAN**—*See* Mourn.
- BEND**—*See* Incline, Crooked.
- BENEFIT**—profit, service, use, avail; good, advantage, blessing, favor conferred. *See* Privilege, Use, Good, Interest, Gain.
- BENT**—flexure, flexion, curvity; bias, inclination, disposition, tendency, drift, scope, turn, direction, propensity; prepossession, influence, sway. *See* Disposition, Direction, Humor, Course, Crooked.
- BEQUEATH**—*See* Will.
- BETOKEN**—signify, portend, augur, presage, forebode, predict, foreshow, denote. *See* Denote, Bear, Foretell, Omen.
- BETTER**—meliorate, ameliorate, amend, emend, improve; rectify, correct, reform; advance, support. *See* Correct, Improvement.
- BEWAIL**—*See* Grieve.
- BEWARE**—*See* Aware, Wary.
- BID**—call, invite, ask, summon; command, order, direct; offer, propose; denounce, threaten. *See* Call, Offer, Invite, Ask.
- BIG**—great, large, bulky, huge; protuberant, pregnant; full, fraught; swelled, tumid, inflated; haughty, proud. *See* Great, Large, Greatness, Full, Swell, Bombastic.
- BIGNESS of body**—corpulence, corpulency, lustiness, fleshiness, grossness; fatness, obesity, coarseness; bulk, size. *See* Size, Greatness, Fatness.
- BILE**—*See* Anger.
- BIND**—*See* Tie.
- BIRTH**—*See* Beget.
- BITTER**—*See* Sour.
- BLACK**—*See* Dark.
- BLAME**—*See* Censure, Reproach.
- BLAME**—censure, upbraid, reproach, condemn, reprehend, chide, reprove, disapprove. *See* Reproach, Chide, Fault, Culpable.
- BLAMELESS**—inculpable, unblamable, irreproachable, irreprehensible, irreprovable, innocent, guiltless; unblemished, spotless, faultless, immaculate, unspotted. *See* Stain, Blemish, Culpable.
- BLAZE**—glare, flare, flame; irradiate, illumine, illuminate, emblaze, blazon, publish. *See* Gleam, Shine, Publish.
- BLEMISH**—stain, spot, flaw, tint, speck, scar; imperfection, fault, defect; stigma, reproach, disgrace, taint, deformity, turpitude. *See* Stain, Fault, Blame, Disgrace, Reproach.
- BLESS**—*See* Happiness.
- BLOCKHEAD**—stupid fellow, dolt, thick skull, clodpoll, clodpate, clodhopper, numskull, dunce, dullard, bullhead, lubbard, lubber, drone, sluggard, idler, booby, losel, scoundrel. *See* Country man, Villain.
- BLOODY**—sanguinary; murderous, cruel, savage, barbarous. *See* Cruel, Barbarous, Skill.
- BLOT**—*See* Stain, Blemish, Expunge.
- BLUNT**—*See* Dull.
- BLUNT**—obtuse, dull, not sharp, pointless, edgeless; plain, unceremonious, uncivil, rude, unpolished, unpolite, rough, inelegant, indelicate, abrupt, coarse. *See* Awkward, Dull, Polite.
- BOASTER**—vaunter, braggadocio, braggart, bragger, bravo, puffer, rodомont, rodомontadist, rodомontador, blusterer, bully, swaggerer. *See* Vaunting.
- BOIL**—seethe, bubble, effervesce. *See* Hot.
- BOLD**—daring, courageous, brave, intrepid, fearless, undaunted, dauntless; confident, not timorous; audacious, insolent, contumacious, impudent, rude, forward, barefaced, shameless; licentious; steep, abrupt. *See* Determined, Foolhardy, Brave, Impertinent, Courage.
- BOMBASTIC**—bombast, inflated, pompous, swelled, tumid, turgid, high-sounding, hyperbolic, grandiloquent, magniloquent. *See* Big, Swell.
- BONDAGE**—*See* Liberty, *being deprived of*.
- BORDER**—*See* Brink, Edge.
- BORN**—*See* Beget.

- BOUND**—limit, restrict, qualify, restrain. confine, circumscribe; end, terminate. *See End, Qualify, Confine, Limited.*
- BOUND back**—rebound, recoil; resound, reverberate, echo. *See Cast back, Sound.*
- BOUNDS**—limits, borders, boundaries, frontiers, confines, marches; extent, restrictions. *See Limited, End, Edge.*
- BOUNTY**—liberality, munificence, beneficence, generosity, benevolence, benignity, kindness; abundance, profusion. *See Good, Kindness, Generous.*
- BRACELET**—*See Covering.*
- BRAVE**—courageous, bold, daring, intrepid, undaunted, fearless, gallant, valorous, valiant, heroic, magnanimous. *See Bold, Courage.*
- BREAK**—*See Overcome, Fail, Violation, Incursion.*
- BREATHE**—*See Spirit.*
- BREED**—generate, hatch, engender, produce, occasion, cause, originate; educate, instruct; bring up, nurse, foster. *See Cause, Fruitful, Race, Foster.*
- BRIEF**—short, concise, laconic, succinct, summary, compendious. *See Short.*
- BRIGHT**—shining, lucid, splendid, brilliant, luminous, sparkling, animated; glossy, glistening; limpid, transparent, translucent, clear, transparent; evident, manifest; resplendent, lustrous, illustrious, glorious, irradiated, illuminated; burnished, furbished, polished. *See Shine, Strong, Clear, Transparent.*
- BRING about**—effect, bring to pass, accomplish, perform, effectuate, achieve, fulfill, attain, do, cause to be, produce. *See Accomplish, Do, Performance, Effect.*
- BRINK**—margin, edge, verge, border, bank; brim, rim; coast, shore, beach, side. *See Edge.*
- BRISKNESS**—liveliness, vivacity, quickness, sprightliness, gayety, effervescence; alacrity, cheerfulness, alertness, assiduity; readiness, promptitude, activity, agility. *See Quickness, Lively, Cheerfulness.*
- BROAD**—*See Large.*
- BROADNESS**—breadth, latitude, extent, wideness, width. *See Wide.*
- BROKEN, easily**—brittle, fragile, frail, weak, slight, frangible. *See Weak.*
- BROTHER**—*See Lewd.*
- BRUISE**—crush or mangle with blows, contuse; pound, break, mangle, crush, beat, pulverize. *See Beat.*
- BRUTAL**—beastial, brutish, savage, cruel, inhuman, ferocious, unfeeling, barbarous, merciless, sensual, irrational, senseless. *See Beastly, Cruel.*
- BRUTE**—*See Brutal.*
- BUBBLE**—*See Boil.*
- BUCKLER**—*See Covering.*
- BUD**—put forth, sprout, germinate, shoot.
- BUILD**—*See Found, House, Instruct.*
- BUILDING**—structure, edifice, fabric, erection, construction, pile, shed, house. *See House, Fabric.*
- BURDEN**—*See Weight.*
- BURDEN**—load, weight, burden; freight, cargo. *See Freight.*
- BURN**—*See Hot, Anger.*
- BURY**—inter, entomb, deposit a corpse, inhumate, inhumate; hide, conceal, overwhelm, cover. *See Unbury, Hide.*
- BUSINESS**—vocation, avocation, calling, profession, trade, art, employment, occupation, engagement, office, duty; matter, concern, affair, point, subject. *See Office, Trade.*
- BUTCHER**—*See Kill, Destruction.*
- BUY**—*See Trade, Redeem.*
- CAJOLE**—flatter, adulate, compliment, praise, fawn, wheedle, coax, soothe, delude, humor, induce, persuade. *See Fawn, Flatter, Deceive.*
- CALL back what one has said or written**—retract, recall, disavow, recant, revoke, reverse; abjure, forswear; reject, renounce, deny; countermand, contradict; rescind, repeal, abrogate, abolish, annul, disannul, nullify. *See Recall, Disown, Annul.*
- CALL out**—evoke; vociferate, utter, cry, exclaim, ejaculate. *See Utter, Cry.*
- CALL together**—convoke, convene; summon, cite, collect, gather, assemble, muster, congregate, amass, accumulate. *See Gather.*
- CALLING together**—convocation, congregation, assembly, gathering; parliament, congress, diet, convention, conventicle, session, presbytery, synod, sanhedrim, senate, council chamber, conference, meeting, company. *See Council, Interview, Collection.*

- CALM**—serene, unruffled, placid, sedate, gentle, bland, mild, quiet, cool, collected, peaceful, halcyon, composed, still, unmoved, undisturbed, tranquil. *See Gentle, Even, Silence.*
- CARE**—concern, anxiety, solicitude; heed, caution, circumspection, wariness, attention, regard; charge, oversight, management, direction, economy; trouble, perplexity. *See Trouble, Caution, Look, Oversight, Thought.*
- CAREFUL**—anxious, solicitous, cautious, wary, mindful, heedful, attentive, intent, observant, circumspect, provident, prudent, watchful, vigilant, diligent, assiduous, sedulous, elaborate. *See Thoughtful, Wary.*
- CARELESS**—heedless, thoughtless, negligent, unthinking, inattentive, regardless, unmindful, neglectful, unsolicitous, improvident, remiss, listless, reckless, incautious, inconsiderate, inadvertent, unconcerned; hasty, slight, cursory, desultory, superficial, loose, immethodical; roving, wavering. *See Indifferent, Lazy, Hasty, Loose.*
- CARRIAGE**—chariot, coach, curricule, vehicle, car, omnibus, phaeton, drosky, sociable, gig, cart, wagon.
- CASH**—*See Money.*
- CAST**—throw, fling, hurl, drive, thrust, push, sling, jerk. *See Send, Throw.*
- CAST down**—dejected, depressed, grieved, discouraged, disheartened, humiliated. *See Sad, Dull.*
- CAST back or off**—reject, retort, echo, reverberate, rebound, report, reflect, rebuff; desert; forsake, abandon, renounce. *See Bound back, Abandon.*
- CATALOGUE**—list, register, muster, roll, record; scroll, schedule. *See Chronicle, Enlist, Nomenclature.*
- CATCHING**—seizure, caption, capture; apprehension, arrest. *See Take, Seize.*
- CATHOLIC**—*See Whole, All.*
- CAUSE**—produce, effect, bring into existence, create, occasion, engender, generate, breed, induce; motive, incitement, inducement, reason. *See Do, Breed, Effect, Induce, Occasion, Origin.*
- CAUTION**—care, concern, regard, carefulness, circumspection, prudence, solicitude, wariness, watchfulness, vigilance; notice, advice, warning, admonition. *See Care, Warning.*
- CAVE**—*See Opening.*
- CAVIL**—carp, censure, catch at, quarrel, object, evade; contest, dispute. *See Censure, Object, Quarrel, Shift.*
- CAVIL**—*See Jest, Trick.*
- CEASING**—cessation, truce, leaving off, discontinuance, vacation, intermission, pause. *See Rest, Agreement.*
- CENSURE**—*See Blame, Cavil.*
- CERTAIN**—sure, infallible, secure, doubtless. *See Actual, Doubted, not to be.*
- CHAIN**—*See Band, Covering, Linking together.*
- CHANCE**—luck, casualty, fortuity, fortune, accident, incident, occurrence, event, contingency, adventure, hazard. *See Fortune, Luck, Event, Occasion, Danger.*
- CHANGE**—alter, vary; exchange, substitute, commute; reciprocate, interchange, barter, truck, traffic. *See Interchange, Trade, Wave.*
- CHANGEABLE**—variable, mutable, fickle, inconstant, versatile, unsteady, irresolute, wavering, uncertain, veering. *See Undetermined, Always, Lightness.*
- CHARACTER**—mark, figure; reputation, repute, estimation; description, account, representation; person; sort, class, species, kind. *See Mark, Fame, Sort.*
- CHARGE**—*See Office.*
- CHARITY**—love, affection; alms; benevolence, beneficence; kindness, goodness, benignity, graciousness, tenderness. *See Kindness, Mercy, Favor.*
- CHARM**—*See Amiable.*
- CHASTE**—*See Modest.*
- CHASTENESS**—chastity, continence; modesty, purity, virtue. *See Honesty.*
- CHASTISE**—*See Punish.*
- CHEAT**—deception, finesse, fraud, delusion, imposture, imposition, trick, artifice, deceit, guile, cunning, craft, sleight, stratagem. *See Hypocrisy, Trick, Cunning.*
- CHECK**—restrain, repress, curb, control, inhibit, stop, hinder. *See Chide, Put down, Keep, Hinder, Damp, Forbid.*
- CHEER**—gladden, exhilarate, animate, enliven, vivify, revive, inspirit, quicken,

- comfort, encourage, invigorate; incite, excite, stimulate, rouse. *See* Gladden, Animate, Comfort, Encourage, Quicken.
- CHEERFULNESS—gayety, liveliness, vivacity, merriment, mirth, sprightliness, blithesomeness, alacrity, jollity, jocundity. *See* Mirth, Pleasure, Briskness.
- CHIDE—scold at, reprove, reprimand, rebuke, reprehend, upbraid, reproach. *See* Blame, Abuse, Check, Disgrace, Censure, Gibe.
- CHILDREN—offspring, progeny, issue, posterity, descendants. *See* Offspring, Issue.
- CHOICE—election, selection, option, preference; *of two things*, alternative. *See* Will, Means.
- CHOKE—*See* Kill.
- CHOOSE—*See* Wish.
- CHRONICLES—annals, archives, records. *See* Chronicle.
- CHRONICLE—history, register, record, memoir, narrative, travels. *See* Account, Memoir, Catalogue, Story.
- CINDER—*See* Ashes.
- CIVILITY—civil behavior, good-breeding, politeness, urbanity, courtesy, courteousness, complaisance, affability. *See* Politeness, Attention.
- CIVILIZATION—refinement, culture, cultivation, reclamation. *See* Education, Improvement.
- CLASS—rank, order, degree, grade, standing. *See* Kind, Order, Sort.
- CLEAR—transparent, translucent, lucid, translucid, diaphanous, pellucid, limpid, pure, unmixed; open; serene, unclouded, luminous, unobscured; sharp, perspicacious; innocent, unspotted, irreproachable; unprepossessed, unpreoccupied, impartial; unentangled, unperplexed, unembarrassed, free; liberated, freed, acquitted. *See* Transparent, Bright, Open, Free.
- CLEAR—plain, apparent, evident, undoubted, indubitable, indisputable, undeniable, manifest, visible, unobscure, obvious, open, conspicuous, distinct, perspicuous, express, explicit. *See* Explanatory, Discernable.
- CLEAR—purify, clarify, cleanse, purge; liberate, extricate, disembarass, disentangle, disengage, evolve; elucidate, illumine, illuminate, illustrate; exculpate, exonerate, absolve, acquit, pardon, discharge, relieve; justify, vindicate. *See* Free, Assert, Shine. Explain, Discharge, Forgive.
- CLERGYMAN—ecclesiastic, minister, pastor, presbyter, pope, cardinal, archbishop, bishop, archdean, dean, rector, vicar, curate. *See* Ecclesiastic, Minister.
- CLEVER—expert, dexterous, adroit, ready, skillful, experienced; intelligent. *See* Able, Ready, Intellectual.
- CLIMB—*See* Go.
- CLOAK—mask, veil, blind, cover, disguise, pretext, pretense, excuse. *See* Cover, Gloss, Excuse, Pretense.
- CLOSE—*See* Thick, Surround, Narrow.
- CLOTHE—*See* Invest.
- CLOTHES—garments, apparel, dress, clothing, attire, array, vestments, vesture, raiment, robes, garb, habits, habiliments, coverings. *See* Dress, Covering, Beautify.
- COARSE—*See* Thick.
- COAT—*See* Covering.
- COIN—*See* Money.
- COLD—*See* Insensibility.
- COLLECTION—gathering, muster, assemblage, assembly, group, crowd, congregation; contribution. *See* Crowd, Company, Calling together.
- COLOR—hue, tint, tinge, dye; false show, pretense, pretext, guise, semblance. *See* Paint, Stain, Pretense, Cloak, Show.
- COMBINE—unite *or* join two or more things, link closely, join, unite, coalesce, associate, league, confederate, band. *See* Plot, League.
- COME—*See* Go.
- COMFORT—strengthen, invigorate, console, cheer, solace, animate, gladden, revive, encourage, support. *See* Animate, Cheer, Encourage.
- COMMAND—mandate, order, injunction, precept, charge, behest; edict; bull. *See* Order, Precept, Decree.
- COMMANDING—magisterial, imperative, imperious, authoritative, dictatorial, haughty; arrogant, assuming; overbearing, domineering. *See* Proud.
- COMMENT—commentary, annotation, note, explanation, exposition, elucidation, notice, remark. *See* Remark, Explanation.

- COMMON**—ordinary, vulgar, general, public, universal, frequent, usual; not noble, not respected, not distinguished, low, mean; prostitute, lewd. *See* Public, Universal, Mean, Gross, Lewd.
- COMMUNION**—fellowship, intercourse, converse, association, society, interchange; agreement, concord, alliance. *See* Interchange, Agreement, Concord, Speech.
- COMPANION**—associate, compeer, equal, comrade, consort, partner, fellow, mate, confederate, ally, accomplice; coadjutor, colleague. *See* Acquaintance, Follower, Accomplice.
- COMPANY**—collection, association, corporation, society, partnership, community; alliance, confederacy, combination, union, league, coalition; congregation, assembly, assemblage, crowd, group, crew, gang, troop. *See* Collection, Party, Council, Band, Crowd.
- COMPARISON**—simile, similitude, similarity, likeness; proportion. *See* Likeness.
- COMPASS**—surround, environ, encompass, encircle, inclose, invest, besiege, beleaguer; obtain, attain to, procure, accomplish; purpose, intend, imagine, plot, contrive. *See* Invest, Surround, Contrive, Accomplish, Embrace.
- COMPASSION**—*See* Feeling.
- COMPENDIUM**—*See* Abridgment.
- COMPLAIN**—*See* Grieve, Mourn.
- COMPLAINING**, *always*—querulous, querulous, discontented, dissatisfied, peevish, fretful, ill-humored, testy, petulant, irritable, captious. *See* Cross, Fretful, Angry.
- COMPLETION**—consummation, perfection, achievement, accomplishment, fulfillment, attainment. *See* Accomplishment, Performance.
- COMPRESS**—condense, press, squeeze, crowd. *See* Abridge, Squeeze.
- CONCEAL**—*See* Hide.
- CONCEIT**—conception, idea, thought, image; notion, imagination, opinion, fancy, freak, whim, maggot. *See* Whim, Pride, Thought, Vain, Opinion.
- CONCORD**—harmony, agreement, peace, union, unity; harmony, melody. *See* Agreement, Peace.
- CONDITION**—term, stipulation, article, proviso, provision. *See* Situation, State, Bargain.
- CONFIDENCE**—trust, reliance, hope, assurance, dependence. *See* Belief, Hope, Trust.
- CONFIN**—bound, limit, circumscribe, shut up, inclose, imprison, stint, restrain, restrict. *See* Bound, Liberty, *deprived of*.
- CONFUSED**—disordered, deranged, indistinct, indiscriminate; involved, intricate. *See* Intricacy, Entangle, Order, *put out of*, Promiscuous, Crowd.
- CONFUSION**—*See* Medley.
- CONNECTED**—joined, conjoined, linked, united; related, relative, relevant; contiguous, adjoining; consecutive, consequential; allied, confederate. *See* Accompanying.
- CONQUER**—*See* Overcome.
- CONSTITUENT**—component, essential, elemental, intrinsic. *See* Necessary, Intrinsic, Formal, Important.
- CONSULT**—advise with, seek counsel; deliberate, consider, submit to, refer to. *See* Refer.
- CONTAIN**—hold, comprehend, comprise, embrace, include, inclose. *See* Hold, Embrace.
- CONTEMPTIBLE**—deserving contempt, despicable, mean, vile, base, paltry, pitiful. *See* Mean, Disdain.
- CONTINUE in a course**—persevere, pursue, prosecute, persist.
- CONTRARY**—opposite, reverse, adverse, contradictory, inconsistent, repugnant, inimical. *See* Against, Opposite.
- CONTRIVE**—devise, plan, scheme, invent; machinate, plot, colleague, concert, manage. *See* Design, Discover, Invent, Make.
- CONTUMELY**—contemptuousness, insolence, contempt, contemptuous language; rudeness, obloquy, reproach. *See* Disdain, Disgrace, Slander.
- CONVIVIAL**—festal, festival, festive, social, sociable, jovial. *See* Merry.
- COOL**—refrigerate, refresh. *See* Refresh, Cold.
- COPY**—*See* Imitate.
- CORRECT**—set right; proper, right, upright, honest, just, accurate, exact, faultless, nice, precise, punctual, punctilious, strict, scrupulous. *See* Right, Particular, Honesty, Nice.
- CORRESPONDENT**—answerable to, con-

- formable, agreeable, suitable, adapted.
See Accordant.
- CORRUPT**—putrid, rotten, spoiled, tainted, vitiated, unsound, depraved, debased, impure, wicked, sinful; not genuine.
See Rotten, Wicked.
- CORRUPT**—become putrid, putrefy, rot; vitiate, deprave, infect, defile, pollute, contaminate, taint, adulterate, debase, sophisticate; waste, spoil, consume; pervert, falsify; bribe; entice, allure.
See Rot, Stain, Worse, *make*, Waste.
- COTTAGE**—cot, cabin. *See* House.
- COUNCIL**—assembly, parliament, congress, diet, senate, sanhedrim, cortes; session, presbytery, synod, general assembly; consistory, college. *See* Calling together.
- COUNT**—number, reckon, compute, estimate, rate, calculate; ascribe, impute, charge; esteem, account, think, judge, consider, repute, hold. *See* Reckon, Accuse, Lay, Value, Think.
- COUNTRYMAN**—rustic, peasant, farmer, husbandman, agriculturist, cultivator, laborer, villager, cottager, cotter; swain, hind, clown, plowman, churl, boor, bumpkin, lout. *See* Blockhead, Coxcomb, Awkward.
- COURAGE**—bravery, intrepidity, resolution, fortitude, heroism, boldness, fearlessness, valor, firmness, daring, courageousness, spirit, gallantry. *See* Bold, Brave.
- COURSE**—running, flowing, passing, race, career, passage, voyage, road, route; series; succession, order, turn, class, train, chain, concatenation, string, link, consecution; system; manner, way, mode, method, line, deportment; bent, propensity, will. *See* Order, Proceeding, Stream, Way, Bent.
- COVENANT**—*See* Bargain, Alliance.
- COVER**—*See* Cloak, Hide.
- COVERED** with—Y. *See* Full.
- COVERING**—cover, covercle, coverlet, lid; shelter, defense, protection, covert; pavilion; veil, coat, tunic, capuchin; clothing, raiment, dress, garment, harness, armor, tackle, tackling, coat of mail, panoply, cap-a-pie, casque, helmet, morion, head-piece, visor, mask, habergeon, cuirass, breastplate, bracelet, gauntlet, buckler, target, shield, greaves, shoe. *See* Clothes, Dress.
- COVET**—*See* Desire, Wish.
- COWARDICE**—timidity, pusillanimity, cowardliness, dastardliness, dastardness, timorousness, poltroonery; fear, apprehension, dread. *See* Fear, Afraid.
- COXCOMB**—vain showy fellow, fop, gay trifling man, macaroni, fribble, finical fellow. *See* Blockhead, Fool.
- CRANE**—*See* Bird.
- CREDIT**—*See* Trust.
- CRIME**—*See* Blame, Sin, Wicked, Debt.
- CROOKED**—bent, curved, curving, incurvated, bowed, aquiline, hooked; oblique, winding, awry, asquint; devious, forward, perverse; disfigured, deformed. *See* Bent, Winding, Obstinate, Disfigure, Twist.
- CROSS**—oblique, falling athwart, transverse; adverse, opposite, obstructing; perverse, intractable; contrary, contradictory; perplexing; peevish, fretful, cynical, ill-humored, sour, morose, surly, snappish, crusty; vexatious, froward, untoward, petulant, captious, irritable, angry, splenetic, testy, crabbed, ill-tempered; interchanged. *See* Fretful, Angry, Ill-tempered, Pain.
- CROSS**—pass over; thwart, obstruct, hinder, stop, embarrass, perplex, oppose, retard, impede, counteract, contravene; clash with, interfere with, be inconsistent with. *See* Hinder, Puzzle, Entangle.
- CROWD**—collection, multitude, concourse, assemblage, assembly, congregation, throng, group, cluster, swarm. *See* Collection, Company.
- CRUEL**—inhuman, merciless, unmerciful, pitiless, unrelenting, relentless, ruthless, savage, fierce, ferocious, barbarous, hard-hearted, brutal, inexorable. *See* Brutal, Barbarous, Hard-hearted, Hardened, Unrelenting.
- CRUMBLE**—*See* Break.
- CRY**—*See* Call out, Noise, Loud, Jingle.
- CULPABLE**—deserving blame, blameable, censurable, reprehensible, reprovable, reproachable, faulty; sinful, criminal, immoral. *See* Blame, Fault.
- CULTIVATE**—*See* Countryman.
- CUNNING**—(knowledge, skill, dexterity, *obs.*); art, artifice, artfulness, craft, craftiness, cunningness, subtlety, duplicity, deceit, deceitfulness, fraud, *fal-*

- lacy, cheat, fraudulency, treachery, trickery, stratagem; *in law*, trick, device, collusion, shift, covin. *See* Cheat, Falsehood, Trick, Story.
- CUNNING—(knowing, skillful, experienced, well-instructed, dexterous, curious, ingenious, *obs.*); artful, crafty, sly, shrewd, astute, penetrating, designing, wily, arch, subtle, subtle, deceitful, trickish. *See* Sly, Deceitful.
- CURE—*See* Check.
- CUSTODY—keeping, guarding, guard, care, watch, inspection; imprisonment, confinement, incarceration, restraint; defense, preservation, security. *See* Liberty, *being deprived of*.
- CUSTOM—common use, usage, habit, fashion; practice, way, manner, prescription. *See* Use, Way, Tax.
- CUT *off*—rescind, abscind, sever, prune, lop; separate, remove, take away, amputate; destroy, extirpate; interrupt, intercept; end, finish; prevent, preclude, shut out. *See* Separate, Part, Maim.
- DAGGER—*See* Weapon.
- DAINTY—nice, delicious, savory, palatable, squeamish, fastidious, delicate, rare, luxurious; scrupulous; elegant, tender, soft, pure, neat. *See* Nice, Soft.
- DAMP—moisten, make humid, humectate, wet, water; chill, cool, deaden, depress, deject, abate; weaken, make dull; check, restrain, make languid, discourage, dishearten, dispirit. *See* Humor, Check, Lower.
- DANGER—peril, hazard, risk, jeopardy, venture. *See* Chance.
- DARE—have courage, be bold, venture, presume; challenge, provoke, defy, brave, set at defiance. *See* Attempt, Brave.
- DARK—*See* Gloom, Dull.
- DARKNESS—absence of light, obscurity, opaqueness, opacity, nebulosity, cloudiness, tenebrosity, dimness, dusk, duskiness, eclipse, gloom, gloominess, shade, mistiness, dismalness, mysteriousness, inexplicableness; ignorance; secrecy, privacy; hell; calamities, perplexities, trouble, distress. *See* Gloom, Trouble, Dull.
- DART—*See* Cast, Throw.
- DASH—*See* Strike.
- DAUB—*See* Blot, Stain.
- DAY—*See* Time.
- DEACON—*See* Clergyman.
- DEAD—lifeless, deceased, defunct, inanimate; deep, sound; still, motionless, empty, vacant; unemployed, useless, unprofitable; dull, inactive; gloomy; frigid, cold, unanimated, unaffected, *used of prayers*; tasteless, vapid, spiritless, *used of liquors*. *See* Lifeless, Inanimate, Dull, Flat.
- DEADLY—mortal, fatal, lethal, life-destroying, deleterious, destructive, poisonous; implacable, inexorable, malignant. *See* Mortal, Unrelenting.
- DEAL—*See* Trade.
- DEATH—*See* Perish.
- DEBT—obligation, due, liability, claim, right; *in Scripture*, sin, trespass, transgression, guilt, crime. *See* Obligation, Right, Sin.
- DECEITFUL—deceiving, misleading, in snaring, beguiling, cheating, puny, fallacious, delusive, illusive, illusory, fraudulent, trickish, elusive, counterfeit; simulating, feigning, pretending. *See* Cunning, Sly, Corrupt, Spurious.
- DECEIVE—mislead, cause to err, impose on, delude, cozen, beguile, cajole, cheat; frustrate, disappoint. *See* Cajole, Abuse, Cheat.
- DECIDER *of disputes*—umpire, arbiter, arbitrator.
- DECK—*See* Beautify.
- DECLARE—*See* Tell.
- DECLARE—make known, tell explicitly, exhibit, manifest; proclaim, publish, promulgate, announce; assert, aver, affirm; asseverate, protest. *See* Profess, Discover, Publish, Show.
- DECLINE—*See* Waste, Droop.
- DECREE—edict, law, order, command, mandate, ordinance, proclamation, rule, prohibition; decision, judgment, sentence, adjudication; purpose, determination. *See* Command, Order, Judgment, Rule.
- DEDICATE—*See* Set apart, Apply.
- DEED—*See* Performance.
- DEFAME—*See* Slander.
- DEFEAT—frustrate, disappoint, foil, balk, thwart, baffle, render null and void; disconcert, derange, un-

- settle; overcome. *See* Beat, Baffle, Overcome.
- DEFECTIVE**—wanting, deficient, imperfect; faulty, bad, blamable. *See* Culpable, Bad.
- DEFEND**—*See* Protect.
- DEFENSE**—excuse, apology, plea, justification, vindication. *See* Covering, Excuse, Pretense, Fence.
- DEFINITE**—limited, bounded, determinate; positive, certain, fixed, precise, exact; defining, limiting. *See* Limited, Settled.
- DELAY**—put off, prolong, defer, postpone, protract, prorogue, procrastinate; lengthen, continue; retard, stop, hinder, detain, restrain. *See* Prorogue, Hinder, Keep, Pause, Stay, Loiter.
- DELIVER**—*See* Give up.
- DELUGE**—*See* Water.
- DENOTE**—mark, signify, express, show, indicate, imply, *See* Betoken, Mean, Mark.
- DENSE**—thick, close, compact, heavy. *See* Thick, Close, Tight.
- DENY**—*See* Call back.
- DEPRAVITY**—corruption, deprivation, wickedness, vice, profligacy, crime, sin. *See* Iniquity, Crime, Debt.
- DESCRIBE**—depict, delineate, represent, mark, explain, define, recount. *See* Explain, Relate, Write.
- DESERT**—*See* Alone, Desolate.
- DESIGN**—plan, representation, sketch; contrivance, project, plan, scheme; purpose, purport, intention, aim. *See* Intention, Aim, Plan.
- DESIGN**—delineate, sketch, form an outline; purpose, intend, mean; project, scheme, plan, machinate, plot, colleague, contrive. *See* Mean, Invent, Plot, Plan, Contrive.
- DESIRE**—*See* Wish, Hope, Avarice, Lust.
- DESOLATE**—devastated, laid waste, neglected, destroyed; solitary, desert, void, barren; waste, dreary, drear, uninhabited, sad, melancholy, gloomy, destitute, lonely, lone; deserted of God, afflicted, deprived of comfort. *See* Abandoned, Alone, Lonely.
- DESPAIR**—hopelessness, hopeless state, desperation, despairing; despondency. *See* Lowness, Hopeless.
- DESPISE**—*See* Disdain, Contumely.
- DESPISE**—disdain, contempt, scorn, slight, disregard, neglect. *See* Disdain, Neglect.
- DESPOT**—*See* King.
- DESPOTIC**—arbitrary, absolute, self-willed, supreme, independent, uncontrolled, unlimited, unrestricted; tyrannical. *See* Arbitrary.
- DESTINY**—state appointed or predetermined, ultimate fate; fate, necessity, lot, doom, appointment. *See* Necessity, Ordain, Fix.
- DESTROY**—*See* Build, Waste.
- DESTRUCTION**, *great*—slaughter, carnage, butchery, massacre, havoc, murder, trucidation. *See* Waste, Kill, Slaughter, Hurt.
- DETERMINE**—ended, concluded, decided, limited, fixed, settled, resolved, directed, resolute, bold, firm, steady, peremptory, decisive. *See* Bold, Firm, Ordain, Undetermined.
- DEVIL**—*See* Enemy, Adversary.
- DEVOTE**—*See* Set apart.
- DEVOUR**—*See* Swallow.
- DICTION**—phraseology, wording, style, expression, manner of expression. *See* Language, Speech.
- DICTIONARY**—lexicon, vocabulary, nomenclature, glossary. *See* Nomenclature.
- DIE**—*See* Death.
- DIFFERENCE**—distinction, discrimination, disagreement, dissimilarity, variation, variety, diversity, dissimilitude, disparity, inequality, contrariety; dispute, variance, debate, contention, quarrel, controversy, dissension, discord. *See* Disagreement, Quarrel.
- DIFFERENT**—*See* Unlike.
- DIFFICULT**—not easy, hard to do, laborious, elaborate, arduous; unaccommodating, rigid, austere. *See* Severe.
- DIFFICULTY** (*opposed to easiness or facility*)—hardship, labor, toil; perplexity, embarrassment, trouble; impediment, obstacle, obstruction, opposition, hinderance, let. *See* Hinderance, Obstacle, Trouble, Ease.
- DILIGENCE**—*See* Attention.
- DILIGENT**—assiduous, sedulous, attentive, industrious, careful, laborious, persevering, constant, active. *See* Active.
- DIRECTION**—aim; course, line; order, conduct, management, disposal, adminis-

- tration, guidance, superintendence, supervision; address, superscription. *See Bent, Aim, Lead, Show.*
- DISAGREEMENT—difference, division, dissension, discord, variance, strife, quarrel; unsuitableness. *See Agreement, Difference, Quarrel.*
- DISCERNIBLE—perceptible, visible, discernible, distinguishable, discoverable, ascertainable; manifest, obvious, apparent, evident. *See Clear, See.*
- DISCHARGE—*See Do, Pay, Receipt, Clear.*
- DISCIPLE—adherent, follower, partisan; learner, scholar. *See Follower, Scholar.*
- DISCIPLINE—training, education, instruction, cultivation and improvement; correctness, order, control, restraint, government, rule, subjection; correction, chastisement, punishment. *See Education, Order, Improvement, Punish.*
- DISCOURSE—*See Speech, Dissertation.*
- DISCOVER—*See Find out, Appear, make.*
- DISCOVER—find out, invent, contrive, design, devise; ascertain, detect; uncover, lay open, disclose, show, make visible, reveal, make known, divulge, manifest, declare, expose; espý. *See Contrive, Invent, Declare, Publish, Show.*
- DISDAIN—contempt, contemptuousness, scorn; haughtiness, hauteur, arrogance; indignation. *See Contumely, Despise, Contemptible.*
- DISEASE—*See Illness, Sick.*
- DISFIGURE—deform, deface, change to a worse form, mar, impair, injure the form of. *See Injure, Crooked, Form, Order, put out of.*
- DISGRACE—disfavor, disesteem, discredit, dishonor, disrepute, disreputation, scandal, reproach, ignominy, shame, infamy; odium, obloquy, opprobrium. *See Ashamed, Slander, Contumely, Lower, Shameful, Stain, Blemish.*
- DISGUST—disrelish, distaste, disinclination, dislike; aversion, repugnance, antipathy, odium, offensiveness, hatred; loathing, nausea, nauseousness. *See Nausea, Hatred, Displeasure, Disgrace.*
- DISOWN—disclaim, disavow, not to own, not to allow, deny; renounce, reject; recant, abjure, retract. *See Call back.*
- DISPEL—drive asunder, disperse, dissipate, banish, scatter. *See Scatter, Spread abroad.*
- DISPLEASE—dissatisfy, annoy, tease, vex, offend, anger, irritate, worry, provoke. *See Anger, Offend, Worry.*
- DISPLEASURE—dissatisfaction, disapprobation, dislike, distaste, vexation, indignation, offense, chagrin, mortification, anger, annoyance. *See Anger, Disgust, Enmity.*
- DISPOSITION—disposal, order, method, distribution, arrangement, adjustment; natural fitness or tendency; inclination, bent, bias, propensity, propension; temper, frame, mood, humor. *See Order, Arrangement, Humor, Bent.*
- DISSERTATION—treatise, essay, disquisition, discussion, discourse. *See Argument, Essay.*
- DISTINGUISH—make or ascertain difference, discriminate, separate, discern, specify; make eminent or known, signalize. *See Perceive, Separate, Find out.*
- DISTRICT—division, circuit, portion, allotment; quarter, tract, region, territory, country. *See Part, Country, Kingdom, Dominion.*
- DIVINE—*See Clergyman.*
- DO—perform, effect, effectuate, bring to pass, execute, carry into effect, accomplish, achieve, practice; exert; discharge, convey; finish, transact. *See Accomplish, Bring about, Make, Effect, Finish.*
- DO a crime—commit, effect, perpetrate.
- DOCTOR—*See Scholar.*
- DOCTRINE—whatever is taught; principle, truth, position; dogma, tenet; postulate; maxim. *See Truth.*
- DOLEFUL—sorrowful, expressing grief, mournful, melancholy, sad, afflicted, rueful, woeful, pitiful, piteous, dismal, gloomy. *See Dull, Sad, Pitiable, Melancholy.*
- DOMINION—sovereign or supreme authority, rule, sway, authority, control, power; reign, empire, sovereignty, government; territory, region, country, district; an order of angels. *See Government, Kingdom, District.*
- DOVE—*See Madness.*
- DOUBT—*See Difficulty.*
- DOUBTED, not to be—indisputable, incontrovertible, incontestible, indubitable, unquestionable, undeniably, irrefutable,

- Irrefragable**, doubtless, unquestionless, evident, certain. *See* Certain, Sure, Actual.
- DOZE**—slumber, nap, be drowsy, sleep lightly; stupefy.
- DRAW back**—retire, recede, retreat, withdraw; *out* or *from*, extract, extort, exact; derive, deduce; abstract.
- DREAD**—*See* Fear, Fright, Terrify.
- DREAM**—*See* Sleep.
- DREGS**—sediment, lees, grounds, feculence, fæces, waste or worthless matter, dross, scoria, filings, rust, sweepings, refuse, scum, recrement. *See* Remains.
- DRESS**—apparel, attire, habit, suit, clothes, array. *See* Clothes, Covering, Formality, Beautify.
- DRINK**—beverage, liquor, tippie; potion, draught, dose.
- DRIVE**—*See* Force.
- DROOP**—sink or hang down, languish, pine, fail, sink, decline, fade, faint, grow weak, be dispirited. *See* Faint, Weaken.
- DROSS**—*See* Remains.
- DRUNK**—drunken, intoxicated, inebriated, crapulous, intemperate; drenched, saturated with moisture or liquor; tipsy, fuddled, tipsled. *See* Intoxication, Luxury.
- DRUID**—*See* Priest.
- DRYNESS**—aridness, aridity, drought, scarcity, thirst; barrenness, jejuneness, want of ornament *or* pathos; want of feeling or sensibility. *See* Insensibility.
- DULL**—stupid, doltish, blockish, slow of understanding; heavy, sluggish, without life, spirit *or* motion, rapid, insensate, insensible, insipid, flat, phlegmatic, sleepy, drowsy; saturnine; sad, melancholy, dismal, gloomy, dejected, dispirited, cheerless; gross, cloggy; not bright, clouded, tarnished, dim, obscure, not vivid, cloudy, overcast, not clear; blunt, obtuse. *See* Sad, Doleful, Flat, Lifeless, Dead, Lonely, Pale.
- DUMB**—mute, silent, not speaking, speechless, taciturn; tacit. *See* Silent.
- DWELL**—inhabit, reside, live, abide; remain, stay, rest, continue: *for a time*, visit, sojourn, lodge. *See* Abide, Stay.
- EAGERNESS**—ardent desire, animated zeal, vehement longing, avidity; ardor, ardency, zeal, heat, warmth, fervency, vehemence, impetuosity; forwardness, readiness, promptness. *See* Greediness, Zeal, Heat, Warmth, Quickness.
- EASE**—facility, easiness, lightness; quiet, rest. *See* Quiet, Difficulty.
- EASE or Calm**—free from pain, etc., relieve, mitigate, alleviate, assuage, allay; calm, appease, pacify, soothe, compose, tranquilize, quiet, still. *See* Calm, Quiet, Allay.
- EAT**—*See* Swallow.
- ECCENTRIC**—deviating, anomalous, irregular; departing, wandering, roaming, roving. *See* Odd, Wander.
- ECCLESIASTIC**—theologian, divine, priest, clergyman, prelate, etc. *See* Clergyman, Divine.
- EDGE**—margin, brink, border, brim, verge, rim, extremity; sharpness, acrimony, keenness, intenseness. *See* Bounds, Brink, Sharpness.
- EDIFY**—*See* Build.
- EDUCATION**—the bringing up, instruction training; formation, tuition, nurture breeding, information. *See* Instruct, Improvement, Discipline.
- EFFECT**—what is produced, consequence, result, event, issue; purpose, intent; utility, profit, advantage; reality, fact; force, validity; *effects*, goods, movables, personal estate. *See* Issue, Goods, Make, Bring about, Operation.
- EFFECT, producing**—effective, efficient, effectual, efficacious, operative, active, causing to be, productive; able, powerful. *See* Make, Active, Able, Powerful.
- EFFIGY**—image, likeness, picture, resemblance, representation, similitude, portrait, figure, make. *See* Form, Likeness.
- ELDER**—*See* Old.
- ELEMENT**—*See* Constituent.
- EMBLEM**—inlay, mosaic work; type, symbol, figure, allusive picture, painted enigma, typical designation, representation, allusion. *See* Figure, Mark.
- EMBRACE**—take, clasp *or* inclose in the arms, press, hug, gripe; seize eagerly, lay hold on, receive *or* take willingly; comprehend, include *or* take in; comprise, inclose, compass, encompass, contain, encircle; salute, etc. *See* Take, Kiss, Contain, Compass.

- EMPTY space**—vacuum, vacuity, void, chasm. *See* Void.
- EMULOUS**—*See* Jealousy.
- ENCOURAGE**—give courage to, sanction, countenance, abet, foster, support, cherish; embolden, animate, inspire, incite, instigate, inspirit, urge, impel. *See* Animate, Cheer, Foster, Strengthen. Protect, Support.
- END**—*See* Finish.
- END**—extreme, point, extremity, limit, termination, close, conclusion, ultimate state; finish, consequence, issue, result; ultimate point, object intended, scope, aim, drift. *See* Aim, Bound, Intention, Issue.
- END, without**—endless, eternal, everlasting, sempiternal, infinite, interminable, perpetual, continual, incessant; boundless, illimitable, unlimited. *See* Unbounded, Bounds, Immense.
- ENDOW**—gift, indue, invest, supply with, furnish, imbue. *See* Invest.
- ENEMY**—*See* Adversary, Inimical.
- ENGROSS**—seize in the gross, take the whole, engage wholly, absorb, monopolize, appropriate. *See* Swallow up.
- ENJOYMENT**—fruition, pleasure, satisfaction, gratification, agreeable sensations, delight, delectation; possession, occupancy. *See* Pleasure, Sport.
- ENLIGHTEN**—make light, shed light on, supply with light; lighten, illumine, illuminate, give light to, give clearer views, instruct. *See* Light, Instruct.
- ENLIST**—enroll, enter in a list, register, record, chronicle; recruit. *See* Catalogue.
- ENLIVEN**—animate, cheer, exhilarate. *See* Animate, Cheer.
- ENMITY**—unfriendly disposition, ill-will, malevolence, animosity, hatred, malignity, hostility, rancor, malice, aversion, displeasure. *See* Displeasure, Hatred, Anger, Envy, Malice, Spite.
- ENOUGH**—sufficiency; abundance, plenty; competence, competency, adequacy. *See* Abounding.
- ENTANGLE**—twist, entwine, implicate, in-fold, inwrap, involve, perplex, embarrass, distract, complicate, intricate, puzzle, bewilder; insnare, catch, trepan, entrap, illaquate. *See* Twist,
- Cross, Grieve, Puzzle, Intricacy, Confused.
- ENTHUSIAST**—person of ardent zeal, zealot, fanatic, visionary; bigot. *See* Warm.
- ENTIRE**—*See* Whole.
- ENTRAILS**—*See* Bowels.
- ENTREAT**—beseech, supplicate, importune, exhort, implor. *See* Beg, Ask, Pray, Encourage.
- ENTREATY**—urgent prayer, earnest petition, prayer, supplication, petition, request, solicitation, suit, exhortation, persuasion. *See* Petition, Beg, Pray.
- ENVY**—malevolence, ill-will, malice, malignity, pique, grudge; suspicion, jealousy, public odium, ill-repute, invidiousness; rivalry, emulation, competition. *See* Enmity, Malice, Spite.
- EQUAL**—same, even, uniform, not variable, equable; just, equitable, right; adequate, proportionate, commensurate, equivalent, competent, meet. *See* Able, Suitable, Fair, Like, Even, Inadequate.
- ERECT**—*See* Right.
- EPOUSED**—engaged in marriage, betrothed, affianced, contracted, married, wedded; embraced. *See* Marriage.
- ESPY**—see, discern, detect, discover, perceive, descry. *See* Perceive, Look.
- ESSAY**—tract, treatise; essay, trial, etc. *See* Dissertation, Attempt, Try.
- ESTEEM**—*See* Value, Reckon.
- ETERNAL**—*See* Lasting.
- EVEN**—level, smooth, not rough, flat, plain; uniform, equal, calm, equable. *See* Equal, Calm.
- EVENT**—*See* Chance.
- EVERY**—*See* All, Whole.
- EVIDENCE**—proof, testimony, attestation; voucher, certificate, deposition. *See* Prove, Proof.
- EVIL**—*See* Ill, Bad, Wicked.
- EXAMPLE**—pattern, model, paradigm, copy, precedent, former instance, exemplar, original, archetype, instance, exemplary person; sample, specimen. *See* Copy, Likeness.
- EXCESS**—more than enough, superfluousness; superfluity, redundancy; exuberance, superabundance. *See* Extravagance, Much, too.
- EXCURSION**—rambling; expedition, journey, trip, tour, jaunt, ramble. *See* Ramble.

EXCUSE—apology, plea, defense, pretense, pretext. *See* Defense, Cloak, Covering.

EXHORT—*See* Encourage, Entreat.

EXILE—banish, expatriate, expel, proscribe. *See* Banishment.

EXPENSE—money expended, cost, charge, price; dearness, costliness, expensiveness. *See* Lavish.

EXPENSIVE—costly, sumptuous, valuable, dear; given to expense, extravagant, lavish, prodigal, profuse; liberal, generous. *See* Spend, Lavish, Waste.

EXPERIENCE—*See* Trial.

EXPERT—dexterous, skillful, ready. *See* Ready.

EXPIATE—atone for, satisfy, propitiate; compensate, requite. *See* Amends, make, Satisfy.

EXPLAIN—make plain, expound, illustrate, * explicate, unfold, elucidate, illuminate, interpret, describe, define, solve. *See* Describe, Clear, Relate, Unfold.

EXPLANATION—exposition, illustration, interpretation, explication, definition, description, elucidation, solution. *See* Comment.

EXPLANATORY—serving to explain, exgetical, expository, descriptive, illustrative, elucidatory; explicit, express; circumstantial, minute. *See* Clear.

EXPUNGE—efface, blot out, obliterate, erase, rase, cancel.

EXTRAVAGANT—wandering beyond limits, prodigality, profusion, profuseness, excess; irregularity, wildness, preposterousness, monstrosity. *See* Excess, Waste, Lavish.

EXTREMITTY—*See* End.

FABLE—*See* Story.

FABRIC—frame, structure, building, edifice; texture, contexture, web, workmanship. *See* Building, House.

FACTION—junto, clique, cabal, party, coterie; tumult, discord, dissension. *See* Quarreling, Party, Plot.

FADE—*See* Droop.

FAIL—*See* Weakness, Fault, Miscarriage.

FAILURE—failing, deficiency, cessation of supply, total defect; omission, non-performance; decay, defect; bankruptcy, breaking in estate, breaking, insolvency.

FAINT—weak, feeble, languid, exhausted,

low; not bright; not loud, low; imperfect, not striking; cowardly, timorous; not vigorous, not active; dejected, depressed, dispirited. *See* Weak, Droop, Low.

FAIR—clear, beautiful, handsome; clear, not cloudy; open, frank, honest; equal, just, equitable, right, reasonable, upright; honorable, mild; civil, pleasing, not harsh. *See* Beautiful, Clear, Art, without, Equal, Open, Reasonable.

FAITH—*See* Trust.

FAITHFULNESS—fidelity, fealty, loyalty, trustiness, honesty, firm adherence, strict performance; truth, veracity. *See* Belief, Truth, Honesty.

FAITHLESS—unbelieving, not believing; perfidious, treacherous, punie, disloyal, unfaithful, neglectful; false. *See* Deceitful, Unfaithfulness.

FALL—*See* Tumble.

FALSE—*See* Deceive, Genuine, not.

FALSEHOOD—untruth, fabrication, fiction, falsify, lie, fib; mendacity; deceit, fraud, fallacy, duplicity, double-dealing, falseness, counterfeit, imposture. *See* Cheat, Cunning, Invent, Lie, Story.

FAME—public report or rumor; celebrity, renown; reputation, credit, esteem, honor; rumor, report. *See* Character, Respect, Hearsay, Name.

FAMILY—*See* House.

FAMILIAR—acquainted with, conversant, versed in; affable, free, sociable. *See* Free.

FAMILIARITY—intimate acquaintance, intimacy, affability, sociability, courtesy, freedom. *See* Freedom, Acquaintance, Intimacy.

FAMOUS—renowned, celebrated, much-talked of and praised, illustrious, distinguished, eminent; conspicuous; excellent, transcendent. *See* Noted.

FANCIFUL—full of fancies or wild images, fantastical, whimsical, ideal, visionary, chimerical, capricious, humorous, freakish; imaginative. *See* Odd, Imaginary.

FANCY—*See* Think.

FARCE—*See* Sport.

FASTEN—make fast, lock, bolt, bar, secure, fix; join to, affix, attach, append, annex, conjoin, adjoin, subjoin; adhere, cohere, stick. *See* Fix, Join.

FATE—*See* Destiny.

FATNESS—obesity, obeseness, fleshiness, corpulency, grossness, coarseness; untownness, sliminess, richness, fertility, fruitfulness. *See* Bigness, Lusty.

FAULT—*See* Blame.

FAULT—erring, failing, error, mistake, blunder, defect, blemish, imperfection, slight offense, foible, weakness, frailty. *See* Mistake, Blemish, Weakness, Culpable.

FAVOR—kind regard, kindness, countenance, friendly disposition, grace, kind act or office, beneficence, benevolence, good-will, lenity; leave, pardon; advantage, convenience; support, defense, vindication. *See* Kindness, Charity, Support.

FAWN—coax, wheedle, cajole, soothe, humor, flatter meanly, blandish, court servilely, cringe and bow to gain favor. *See* Flatter, Cajole.

FEAR—apprehension, alarm, dread, terror, fright, panic, consternation; anxiety, solicitude; slavish dread; filial fear, reverential fear, awe, reverence, veneration; law and word of God. *See* Cowardice, Afraid, Dread, Fright, Terrify, Trembling, Jealousy.

FEARFUL—full of fear, apprehensive, afraid, timid, timorous, wanting courage; impressing fear, frightful, dreadful, tremendous, terrible, terrific, formidable, horrible, horrid, horrific. *See* Afraid, Formidable, Ghastly.

FEAST—banquet, regale, sumptuous entertainment, rich repast, delicious meal, carousal, treat; festival, holiday. *See* Luxury.

FEEBLE—*See* Weak.

FEED—*See* Nourish.

FEELING—sensation, sense; sensibility, susceptibility; excitement, emotion; pathos, tenderness, concern. *See* Sense, Kindness.

FEELING, *want of*—apathy, etc. *See* Insensibility.

FEIGN—*See* Forged.

FELLOW-HELPER—coadjutor, assistant; colleague, partner. *See* Share.

FENCE—wall, hedge, ditch, bank, etc.; guard, security, defense; fencing. *See* Ditch, Defense, Guard

FEVER—*See* Hot.

FIERCE—*See* Cruel.

FIGURE—*See* Form.

FIGURE *of speech*—trope, metaphor, allegory, metonymy, synecdoche, irony, etc. *See* Speech, Emblem.

FIND *out*—discover, invent, detect, ascertain; unriddle, solve; descry, discern, discriminate, distinguish. *See* Discover, Invent, Distinguish.

FINE—mulct, amerce, confiscate; pecuniary punishment, mulct, amercement, penalty, forfeit, forfeiture, confiscation. *See* Punish, Pay.

FINISH—complete, perfect, accomplish, conclude, end, terminate, close. *See* Do, Perfect.

FIRM—fixed, compact, hard, solid, sclerotic, stable, steady; constant, unshaken, resolute; strong, robust, sturdy. *See* Determined, Solid, Strong.

FIT—suitable, convenient, meet, becoming, expedient, proper, apt; qualified. *See* Able, Becoming, Suitable, Meet, Necessary.

FIT—adapt, suit, accommodate, furnish, adjust, proportion; qualify, prepare, fit out, furnish, equip, accouter. *See* Qualify.

FIX—make stable, set immovably, destine, establish, settle, confirm, ingraft, implant; resolve, determine, limit; appoint, institute; make fast, fasten, secure, attach; place steadily, direct. *See* Settle, Appoint, Assign, Ordain, Fasten.

FLAT—smooth; level, horizontal; prostrate, fallen; tasteless, stale, vapid, insipid, dead; inanimate, lifeless, inert; dull, unanimated, frigid; dejected, spiritless, depressed; unpleasing; peremptory, absolute, positive, downright; not sharp or shrill, not acute; low, dull. *See* Dull, Inanimate, Lifeless, Taste, Positive, Low.

FLATTER—adulate, fawn, blandish, compliment, soothe, please, gratify, gloze, wheedle, coax. *See* Fawn, Cajole.

FLAY—skin, excoriate, strip off the skin, gall, rub or wear off the skin, abrade.

FLEET—*See* Ship.

FLIRT—pert hussy, jilt, coquette.

FLOOD—*See* Water.

FLOURISH—grow luxuriantly, thrive, prosper, succeed. *See* Prosper.

FLOW.—*See* Issue, Overflow.

FLUTTER—move or flap the wings rapidly, hover; palpitate, vibrate, undulate, pant. *See* Palpitate.

FOLD.—*See* Entangle.

FOLLOWER—adherent, partisan, dependent, vassal, retainer, imitator; disciple, scholar, learner; pursuer; successor; attendant, companion, associate. *See* Disciple, Companion, Scholar, Villain.

FOLLY—weakness of intellect, imbecility of mind, want of understanding; nonsense, foolery, silliness, inanity, irrationality, unreasonableness; trifling, puerility; weakness, vacuity. *See* Madness, Weakness.

FOOD—diet, regimen; meat, aliment, victuals, provision, eatables, edibles, fare, maintenance; *for* *beasts*, provender, fodder, litter; pasture, pasturage. *See* Livelihood.

FOOL—natural idiot, driveller, simpleton, changling, trifter. *See* Coxcomb, Mimic, Blockhead.

FOOL-HARDY—daring without judgment, rash, precipitate, hasty, foolishly bold, incautious, daring, adventurous, venturesome, venturous. *See* Bold, Hasty.

FOOLISH—void of understanding or sound judgment, weak in intellect; unwise, imprudent; simple, silly, irrational, vain, trifling; ridiculous, absurd, preposterous, unreasonable, despicable; wicked, sinful. *See* Weak, Vain, Insensible, Wicked, Impertinent.

FORBID—prohibit, interdict, bid not to do, proscribe, inhibit; restrain, check, oppose, hinder, obstruct; deny, gainsay, contradict. *See* Gainsay, Keep, Check, Hinder.

FORCE—compel, coerce, constrain, oblige, necessitate; enforce, urge, press, drive, impel; storm, assault; exact, extort. *See* Oblige, Make.

FORCE—strength, active power, power, vigor, might, energy; violence, compulsory power, coercion, compulsion, obligation, constraint, destiny, necessity; momentum or quantity of power produced by the action of one body on another; virtue, efficacy; validity, power to bind or hold; strength or power for war, armament, troops, army, navy; *physical force*, or force of ma-

terial bodies; *moral force*, or power of acting on or influencing the mind; *mechanical force*, or power that belongs to bodies at rest or in motion—as pressure, tension, etc. *See* Power, Obligation, Oblige.

FOREIGN.—*See* Outward, Abroad.

FORESIGHT—forethought, premeditation, forecast; prescience, foreknowledge, prognostication; provident care; previous contrivance. *See* Knowledge, Before.

FORETELL.—*See* Betoken, Know.

FORGED—hammered, beaten, made; counterfeit, feigned, false, fictitious, invented, fabricated, dissembled, framed, untrue, base. *See* Falsehood, Genuine, *not*, Art, *made by*, Invent.

FORGIVE.—*See* Clear, Excuse.

FORLORN.—*See* Alone, Solitary.

FORM—shape, figure, mold, configuration, conformation, construction; manner, disposition; model, pattern, draught; beauty, elegance, splendor, dignity; regularity, method, order; empty show, external appearance, semblance; stated method, established practice, ritual, proscribed mode, rite, ceremony, observance, fashion. *See* Appearance, Attitude, Way, Make, Effigy, Order.

FORM—shape, mold, fashion, model, modify; scheme, plan, contrive, invent; arrange, combine; make, frame, cause to be, create, produce, compose, constitute, construct, compile, establish; enact, ordain. *See* Plan, Invent, Make, Ordain.

FORMAL—according to form, regular, methodical; precise, ceremonious, exact, stiff, express; external; constituent, essential, proper. *See* Regular, Constituent.

FORMALITY—practice or observance of forms, external appearance, ceremony, mode, method, system, order, rule, precision, decorum, decency, seemliness; mode of dress, habit, robe. *See* System, Order, Dress.

FORMIDABLE—exciting fear or apprehension, impressing dread, appalling, terrific, terrible, deterring, tremendous, horrible, frightful, shocking. *See* Fearful, Ghastly, Hideous.

FORSAKE.—*See* Leave, Abandon.

- FORTUNATE**—lucky, successful, prosperous, happy; propitious, auspicious. *See* Lucky, Happy.
- FORTUNE**—chance, hazard, accident, luck; success, event; chance of life, means of living, wealth; estate, possessions; large estate, great wealth; futurity, destiny, fate, doom, lot. *See* Chance, Misfortune, Riches, Destiny.
- FOSTER**—feed, nourish, support, bring up; cherish, harbor, indulge, encourage. *See* Breed, Encourage, Harbor, Nourish.
- FOUND**—lay the basis, set, settle, place, establish, fix; institute, begin, originate; rest, ground; build, construct, rear, erect. *See* Settle, Fix, Begin, Build.
- FOUNTAIN**—*See* Spring.
- FRAME**—*See* Make.
- FRAUD**—*See* Cheat, Deceitful.
- FREE**—disengage, disentangle, rid, strip, clear; set at liberty, liberate, enfranchise, emancipate, rescue, release, relieve, manumit, loose, save, preserve, deliver, exempt. *See* Clear, Redeem, Liberty, *being deprived of*.
- FREE**—being at liberty, unconstrained, unrestrained, unconfined, permitted, allowed; open, candid, frank, ingenuous, unreserved; liberal, generous, bountiful, munificent, not parsimonious; gratuitous; familiar, easy; clear, exempt, guiltless, innocent. *See* Open, Clear, Generous, Ready.
- FREEDOM**—liberty, independence, unrestraint; exemption, privilege, immunity, franchise; frankness, boldness; familiarity; license, improper familiarity; liberation, emancipation, release, enfranchisement. *See* Privilege, Liberty, *being deprived of*, Familiarity.
- FREIGHT**—cargo, burden, load, lading, transportation of goods; ship's hire. *See* Burden, Ship.
- FRETFUL**—ill-humored, peevish, testy, easily irritated, splenetic, angry, petulant, captious. *See* Cross, Angry, Complaining, *always*.
- FRIGHT**—frighten, terrify, scare, alarm, daunt, dismay, intimidate; dishearten, discourage, deter. *See* Fear, Terrify, Dread.
- FROLIC**—wild prank, flight of levity, or gayety and mirth, game, jest, joke, gambol, fun. *See* Jest, Sport, Whim.
- FRUITFUL**—fertile, prolific, pregnant, fecund, generating, productive, abundant, plentiful, plenteous. *See* Abounding, Breed.
- FURY**—*See* Madness.
- GAIN**—get, win, earn, realize, obtain, acquire, procure, receive; reach, attain to, arrive at;—gain, profit, interest, advantage, emolument, lucre, benefit. *See* Prosper, Profitable, Benefit.
- GAINSAY**—contradict, oppose, deny, forbid, controvert, dispute. *See* Forbid, Object.
- GALL**—*See* Anger, Spite.
- GAP**—opening, breach, break; avenue, passage, way; chasm, aperture, cleft, hiatus; defect, flaw. *See* Opening, Way.
- GATHER**—*See* Calling together, Collection, Council.
- GAY**—merry, airy, jovial, sportive, frolicsome; fine, showy, fashionable, stylish, gallant; dissipated, profligate. *See* Merry, Showy.
- GENERATE**—*See* Breed.
- GENEROUS**—well-born, noble, honorable, magnanimous; liberal, benign, beneficent, bountiful, bounteous, munificent, free to give; strong, full of spirit; full, overflowing, abundant; *overmuch*, profuse, prodigal, extravagant. *See* Free, Abounding, Strong, Full, Bounty.
- GENTEEL**—polite, well-bred, easy and graceful, gentlemanly, gentleman-like, urbane, courteous, polished, refined, elegant. *See* Polite.
- GENTLE**—*See* Calm, Soft, Kind.
- GENUINE**—native, real, authentic, natural, true, pure, not spurious; unadulterated, unalloyed, unsophisticated, unpolluted, pure, unmixed, uncontaminated. *See* Actual, Intrinsic, Sincere.
- GENUINE, not**—spurious, unreal, untrue, supposititious, sophisticated, contaminated, polluted, vitiated, corrupted, adulterated, adulterine. *See* Forged, Spurious, Bastard, Vain.
- GHASTLY**—like a ghost, pale, dismal, death-like, cadaverous, wan, grim, frightful, hideous, appalling, horrible, shocking. *See* Fearful, Formidable, Hideous.
- GHOST**—specter, apparition, phantom,

- vision**, hobgoblin, fairy, fay, elf, demon, evil spirit, devil. *See* Appearance, Vision.
- GIANT**—*See* Great.
- GIBE**—reproach, sneer, deride, taunt, scoff, rail at, flout, flier, jeer. *See* Reproach, Abuse, Jest, Laugh at.
- GIFT**—donation, donative, benefaction, present, gratuity; reward, bribe; power, faculty, talent, endowment; *by will*, legacy, bequest; devise. *See* Reward, Power.
- GIMBLET**—*See* Bore.
- GIRD**—*See* Surround, Tie.
- GIVE**—bestow, confer, impart, communicate, present, grant, allow, transmit, deliver; afford, supply, furnish; produce, show, exhibit; render, pronounce, yield, resign; *back* restore, return. *See* Grant, Allow, Give up, Offer.
- GIVE up**—deliver, consign, cease, leave, resign, quit, yield, surrender, relinquish, cede, concede, abandon, addict, devote; renounce, abdicate, forego; forsake, desert. *See* Leave, Abandon, Lay.
- GLAD**—gratified, happy, pleased, delighted, rejoiced, exhilarated; cheerful, joyous, joyful, exhilarating, exciting joy. *See* Happy, Merry, Lively.
- GLADDEN**—make glad, cheer, please, gratify, exhilarate, delight, rejoice. *See* Cheer, Rejoice.
- GLANCE**—glimpse, quick view, short transitory look, peep. *See* Look.
- GLEAM**—shoot of light, glimmer, beam, ray; brightness, splendor. *See* Beam, Blaze, View, Shine.
- GLIDE**—*See* Fall.
- GLOOM**—obscurity, partial or total darkness, thick shade, cloudiness, heaviness, dullness, melancholy, sadness, aspect of sorrow, sullenness. *See* Darkness, Dull, Lonely.
- GLORY**—*See* Honor.
- GLOSS**—make smooth and shining, varnish, cover; palliate, cover with excuse, extenuate, lessen. *See* Cloak, Lessen.
- GLOW**—*See* Warm, Hot.
- GNAW**—*See* Eat.
- GO**—move, pass, flow, walk, travel, journey, depart; *up*, ascend, mount, rise; *forward*, advance, proceed, forward, promote; *before*, precede, prevent, anticipate; *beyond*, transgress, exceed, surpass, excel, transcend; *back*, recede, return, retreat, withdraw, retire, retrograde, retrocede; *in* or *on*, invade, encroach, intrench. *See* Move, Ramble, Wander, Anticipate, Proceeding, Intrude.
- GOAD**—*See* Stir.
- GODLIKE**—resembling God, divine, superhuman; heavenly, celestial. *See* Heavenly.
- GODLY**—holy, sanctified, righteous, pious, religious, devout, sanctimonious. *See* Spiritual, Heavenly, Holy, Religion.
- GOING before**—preceding, foregoing, antecedent, previous, anterior, prior, former. *See* Introductory, Priority.
- GOOD**—benefit, interest, advantage, emolument, profit; welfare, prosperity; virtue, righteousness. *See* Interest, Benefit, Kindness, Bounty.
- GOODS**—movables, effects, chattels, furniture, personal estate; wares, merchandise, commodities, stock. *See* Stock, Merchandise, Property.
- GORE**—*See* Blood.
- GOVERN**—*See* Master.
- GOVERNMENT**—direction, regulation, rule, control, satrapy, jurisdiction, restraint, management, power, dominion, sovereignty; administration, constitution, ministry; empire, kingdom, state; executive power. *See* Dominion, Kingdom.
- GRACE**—*See* Mercy, Kindness, Becoming, Beautify.
- GRAND**—great, illustrious, splendid, magnificent, noble, dignified, elevated, sublime, lofty, exalted, majestic, magisterial, stately, pompous, august. *See* Majestic, Great, High, Showy.
- GRANT**—admit, allow, yield, concede; give, bestow, confer; permit; transfer, convey. *See* Give, Allow, Suffer.
- GRATEFUL**—thankful, impressed, mindful; agreeable, pleasing, acceptable, gratifying, pleasant, welcome; delicious. *See* Agreeable.
- GRATITUDE**—thankfulness, gratefulness; thanks, acknowledgments. *See* Pleasure.
- GRAVE**—low, depressed; solemn; sober, serious, sedate; plain, not gay, not showy; important, momentous, weighty. *See* Low, Sober, Severe, Important.

GREAT—*See* Grand, Large.

GREATNESS—*of size*, magnitude; bulk; corpulence; *of mind*, magnanimity; *of rank*, majesty; *of number*, majority; *of show or state*, magnificence, grandeur. *See* Bigness, Size, Fatness, Large.

GREAT or GREATER, make—magnify, enlarge, amplify, exaggerate, augment, aggrandize; extol, exalt, elevate. *See* Larger, *make*, Praise, Heighten.

GREEDINESS—keenness of appetite, ravenousness, gluttony, voracity, voraciousness, rapacity, rapaciousness; ardent desire, avidity, eagerness. *See* Eagerness, Rapacious, Eat.

GRIEF—sorrow, regret, lamentation, weeping, mourning, affliction, pain. *See* Pain, Repentance.

GRIEVE—mourn, bewail, bemoan, lament, complain, weep, sorrow, cry; afflict, wound, hurt, move, concern, distress, trouble, perplex, vex, disquiet; *for*, deplore, bewail, bemoan, etc.; *with another*, condole, sympathize. *See* Mourn, Complain, Hurt, Entangle.

GROSS—thick, bulky; fat, corpulent; coarse, rude, rough; indelicate, mean, vulgar, impure, unrefined, indecent, obscene, improper, inappropriate, unseemly, unbecoming, shameful; large, enormous, great; dense; unattenuated; stupid, dull; whole, entire. *See* Thick, Common, Mean, Fatness.

GROW—*See* Spring.

GUARANTEE—*See* Answerable *for*.

GUARD—*See* Security, Keep.

GUESS—*See* Think.

GUIDE—*See* Lead, Instruct.

GUILE—*See* Cheat.

HABIT—*See* Dress, Custom.

HAMMER—*See* Beat.

HANDSOME—elegant, nice, beautiful. *See* Beautiful, Nice.

HAPPEN—*See* Chance.

HAPPINESS—beatitude, felicity, bliss, blessedness; welfare, prosperity, success. *See* Prosper.

HAPPY—*See* Glad, Fortunate.

HARBOR—haven, port, bay, inlet; asylum, shelter, lodging.

HARBOR—shelter, secure, secrete, receive, lodge; entertain, cherish, foster, indulge. *See* Hide, Protect, Foster.

HARD—*See* Solid.

HARDENED—made hard, indurated, inured; obdurate, callous, impenetrable, obstinate, unfeeling, insensible, impenitent; remorseless. *See* Insensible, Cruel.

HARD-HEARTED—cruel, pitiless, merciless, unfeeling, inhuman, inexorable, unmerciful. *See* Cruel, Unrelenting.

HARM—*See* Hurt.

HARMLESS—not hurtful *or* injurious, innocuous, innoxious, inoffensive, unoffending; innocent, not guilty; unhurt, undamaged, uninjured. *See* Stain, *without*.

HASTEN—make haste, haste, expedite, speed, dispatch, hurry, press, drive *or* urge forward, push on, precipitate, accelerate. *See* Quicken.

HASTY—quick, speedy, hurried; eager, precipitate, rash, cursory, slight; irritable, irascible, passionate. *See* Quick, Careless, Fool-hardy, Rashness, Angry, Tumultuous.

HATEFUL—exciting great dislike, aversion *or* disgust, odious, abominable, detestable, execrable; malignant, malevolent. *See* Malicious.

HATRED—great dislike *or* aversion, hate, enmity, rancor, malevolence, malice, abhorrence, detestation, aversion, repugnance, antipathy, dislike. *See* Enmity, Malice, Spite, Envy.

HAUGHTY—*See* Proud, Commanding.

HEAD—*See* Behead, Master.

HEAP—*See* Collection, Crowd.

HEAR—listen, hearken, overhear, attend, heed, mark, observe, notice, regard, obey; learn, be told. *See* Mark, Notice.

HEARSAY—common talk, rumor, report, fame, gossip, mere *or* idle talk. *See* Talk, Fame.

HEARTY—from the heart, cordial, sincere, warm, zealous; sound, strong, healthy. *See* Warm, Affectionate, Zealous.

HEAT—*See* Warm, Hot, Anger.

HEAVENLY—celestial; angelic, angelical, spiritual, sublime, divine, supremely excellent, superhuman, supernatural, preternatural. *See* Godlike, Godly, Holy.

HEIGHT of any thing—crisis, acme; climax, summit, top, point, apex. *See* Top.

HEIGHTEN—raise higher, lift, raise, elevate, exalt; advance, improve, ameliorate, increase; aggravate, exasperate,

- irritate, inflame, excite. *See* Greater, *make*, Lift, Anger.
- HELMET—*See* Covering.
- HELP—*See* Assist.
- HERETIC—schismatic, sectarian, sectary, skeptic, infidel, unbeliever, disbeliever, pagan, heathen.
- HERO—*See* Brave.
- HIDDEN—*See* Secret.
- HIDE—keep secret, conceal, abscond, disguise, shelter, secrete, cover, screen, dissemble. *See* Hover, Protect, Bury, Cover.
- HIDEOUS—frightful, terrific, ugly, horrible, horrid, dreadful, shocking, detestable. *See* Ghastly, Formidable.
- HIGH—tall, elevated, alpine, lofty, exalted, raised; noble, magnanimous; aspiring, proud. *See* Proud, Grand, Majestic.
- HINDER—stop, interrupt, intercept, obstruct, impede, prevent, oppose, thwart, embarrass; retard, delay. *See* Oppose, Check, Delay, Interrupt, Prevent, Stay.
- HINDERANCE—let, impediment, obstacle, obstruction, retarding, delay, opposition, difficulty. *See* Difficulty, Let, Obstacle.
- HINT—suggest, intimate, insinuate, refer to, allude to, glance at—a *hint*, innuendo. *See* Refer.
- HIRE—*See* Pay.
- HISTORY—*See* Chronicles.
- HOLD—*See* Contain, Keep.
- HOLINESS—sanctity, sanctitude, piety, devotion, devoutness, godliness, righteousness; sacredness. *See* Religion.
- HOLY—whole, entire, perfect; pure, immaculate; sanctified, pious, devout, religious; hallowed, consecrated, sacred, divine. *See* Whole, Godly, Heavenly, Spiritual.
- HONESTY—integrity, probity, rectitude, uprightness, justice, purity, sincerity, veracity, virtue; equity, fairness, candor, truth, honor. *See* Justice, Chasteness, Truth, Uprightness, Faithfulness, Correct.
- HONOR—*See* Praise.
- HONOR—revere, respect, reverence, venerate, dignify, exalt, glorify, render glorious. *See* Respect.
- HOPE—expectation, wish, desire, anticipation; opinion, belief, trust, dependence, reliance, confidence. *See* Wish, Belief, Confidence.
- HOPELESS—without hope, desperate, irretrievable, irremediable, irrecoverable, lost, gone, abandoned; despairing, despondent. *See* Abandoned, Wicked, Despair.
- HOT—calid, fervid, fervent, ardent, burning, feverish, sultry, fiery, piping; excited, exasperated, violent, furious, impetuous, passionate, irritable; eager, vehement, zealous, animated, brisk, keen; acrid, biting, stimulating. *pungent. See* Intense, Boil, Heat, Angry, Passionate, Warm, Keen.
- HOUSE—habitation, residence, dwelling, abode, cottage, villa, cot, hut, hovel, cabin, wigwam, shed; mansion, manse, messuage, tenement, edifice, building; temple, church, monastery, college, palace; manner of living, the table; family, household, ancestors, lineage, race, dynasty, stock, tribe; deliberative or legislative body of men. *See* Building, Abode, Race, Stock.
- HUE—*See* Color.
- HUMBLE—near the ground, low; lowly, modest, meek, submissive; unpresuming, unpretending, unassuming, un-aspire. *See* Low, Obedient.
- HUMBLE—make low, humiliate, abase, reduce, lower, bring down, debase, degrade, disgrace, deject; crush, break, subdue; mortify; make lowly, make meek and submissive to the divine will; humble one's self, repent, make contrite. *See* Abase, Lower, Lessen.
- HUMOR—moisture, fluid; turn of mind, temper, disposition, mood, frame, turn, tendency, bent, bias; freak, whim, maggot, caprice; wit, satire, burlesque, drollery, fun, pleasantry, jocularly, comicality. *See* Damp, Disposition, Bent.
- HURT—*See* Injury, Grieve, Maim.
- HURT—wound, bruise; detriment, damage, loss, injury, disadvantage, harm, mischief, bane, prejudice, deterioration, depravity, depravation, corruption, vitiation. *See* Bane, Destruction, Injury.
- HURTFUL—injurious, mischievous, pernicious, detrimental, prejudicial, baneful, pestilential, harmful, destructive, no-cent, noxious, noisome, insalubrious, unwholesome. *See* Inimical, Injure, Abusive.
- HYPOCRISY—simulation, dissimulation; disguise, deceit, insincerity, false appearance. *See* Cheat.

- IDLE**—doing nothing, unemployed, unoccupied, inactive, leisure, vacant; useless, ineffectual, vain, frivolous, trifling; unprofitable, barren, unfruitful. *See* Lazy, Vain, Trifling, Barren.
- IGNORANT**—not knowing, uninstructed, uninformed, untaught, unenlightened, unlearned, illiterate, unlettered; unacquainted, unapprised. *See* Barbarous, Wise.
- ILL**—*See* Bad, Wicked, Sick, Malicious.
- ILLNESS**—indisposition, disease, malady, distemper, disorder, sickness; wickedness, iniquity. *See* Invalid, Sick.
- ILL-TEMPERED**—sour, morose, crabbed, peevish, petulant. *See* Cross, Fretful.
- IMAGINARY**—ideal, fancied, visionary, utopian, not real. *See* Fanciful.
- IMITATE**—ape, mimic, mock, personate, feign, counterfeit. *See* Mimic.
- IMMEDIATELY**—instantly, presently, directly, instantler.
- IMMENSE**—unlimited, unbounded, immeasurable, infinite, boundless; vast, very great, huge, very large, prodigious, monstrous. *See* End, *without*, Large.
- IMMODERATE**—exceeding just *or* usual bounds, excessive, inordinate, intemperate, extravagant, unreasonable, egregious, unrestrained, unbounded, unlimited. *See* Immense.
- IMPERTINENT**—not pertaining to the matter in hand, irrelevant; rude, impudent, intrusive, meddling, saucy, insolent; trifling, foolish. *See* Bold, Foolish, Officious, Impudence, Affronting.
- IMPORT**—*See* Mean, Bear.
- IMPORTANCE**—consequence, weight, moment, significance, significancy, avail. *See* Moment.
- IMPORTANT**—bearing on *or* to, weighty, momentous, of consequence, significant, consequential, material, essential, forcible, driving. *See* Grave, Constituent, Pressing.
- IMPORTUNE**—request with urgency, press, urge, tease. *See* Plague, Force.
- IMPRESS**—imprint, stamp, print, mark; fix on the mind, inculcate, instill, infuse, ingraft, implant, engrave. *See* Mark.
- IMPROVEMENT**—advancement, progress, advantage, melioration, amendment, reformation, reform; edification, instruction; emendation, correction; good use *or* employment, application. *See* Advancement, Better, Education, Civilization.
- IMPUDENCE**—shamelessness, immodesty, indelicacy, indecency; assurance, effrontery, boldness with contempt of others, audacity, hardihood, boldness, confidence, insolence, impertinence. *See* Audacity, Shameless, Impertinence.
- INADEQUATE**—not equal to, insufficient, incompetent, incapable, unable, inefficient, unequal, partial, incomplete, defective. *See* Equal, Able.
- INANIMATE**—not having life, lifeless, exanimate, dead. *See* Flat, Dull, Dead, Lifeless.
- INCENSE**—*See* Burn.
- INCLINE**—*See* Lean.
- INCOMMODE**—put to inconvenience, give trouble to, molest, trouble, annoy, vex, harass, disturb. *See* Trouble.
- INCREASE**—augmentation, addition, accession, growing larger, enlargement, extension, aggrandizement, increment; profit, interest; progeny, issue, offspring, produce. *See* Added, *something*, Larger, *make or grow*, Offspring.
- INCURSION**—running into; inroad, irruption, invasion, attack; expedition. *See* Attack, Battle, Run.
- INDICATE**—*See* Show.
- INDIFFERENT**—neutral, careless, heedless, regardless, unconcerned. *See* Careless, Insensible.
- INDIVIDUAL**—not divided *or* not to be divided, single, one, identical, particular, separate, distinct, undivided, abstract. *See* Particular, Same, Separate.
- INDUCE**—bring on, produce, cause; persuade, prevail on, influence, bias; incite, move, instigate, actuate, impel; infer. *See* Invite, Lead, Move, Tempt.
- INFATUATION**—hallucination, stupefaction. *See* Intoxication, Destiny, Mistake.
- INFECTION**—contamination, taint, pollution, poison, vitiation, defilement; contagion. *See* Pest, Plague.
- INFERIOR**—lower, secondary, subordinate, subservient. *See* Servant.
- INFIDEL**—unbeliever. *See* Heretic.
- INFLUENCE**—flowing in, into, *or* on, power, credit, favor; control, direction. *See* Power, Lead.
- INGENIOUS**—skillful, inventive, clever, imaginative, witty. *See* Intellectual, Sharp.

- INGRATULATE**—insinuate, recommend, conciliate, propitiate. *See* Hint, Favor.
- NIMICAL**—unfriendly, hostile, adverse; hurtful, contrary, opposite, repugnant. *See* Hurtful, Opposite.
- INIQUITY**—unrighteousness, injustice, nefariousness, sin, crime, wickedness, irreligion, profanity, impiety, depravity. *See* Injury, Depravity, Misdeed, Unjust.
- INJURE**—hurt, wound; wrong, impair, weaken, damage, make worse, deteriorate, diminish, lessen; tarnish, slander, violate; grieve; *the form*, disfigure, deform, deface. *See* Disfigure, Maim, Hurt, Abuse, Offend, Worse, *make*.
- INJURY**—wrong, damage, loss, hurt, harm, mischief, detriment, outrage, deterioration, injustice, evil, ill, unfairness, iniquity; insult, affront. *See* Hurt, Iniquity, Affront, Violation.
- INSENSIBILITY**—want of sensibility, unfeelingness, apathy, indifference, insusceptibility, torpidity, coldness, callousness, unconcern, disregard, dullness, stupidity, torpor. *See* Feeling, Dryness.
- INSENSIBLE**—that can not be felt or perceived, imperceptible, insensate, apathetic, insusceptible, torpid, stupid, dull, foolish; indifferent, unconcerned, regardless. *See* Hardened, Foolish, Dull.
- INSTRUCT**—teach, inform the mind, edify, educate; direct, enjoin, persuade, admonish, command, inform, advise, give notice to. *See* Guide, Show, Education, Authority, *give*, Enlighten, Build.
- INSTRUMENT**—tool; dupe, gudgeon.
- INSURRECTION**—rising against civil or political authority, sedition, rebellion, revolt, rising, commotion, mutiny. *See* Tumult.
- INTELLECTUAL**—mental, talented, gifted, clever, inventive, imaginative, ideal. *See* Ingenious, Spiritual, Mind.
- INTENSE**—strained, stretched; very close, raised to a high degree, violent, vehement; very severe or keen, extreme; ardent, fervent. *See* Hot, Zealous, Warm.
- INTENTION**—stretching or bending of the mind toward an object, close application, earnestness; design, purpose, purport, import, meaning, intent, intendment, view, aim, drift, end, object, scope. *See* Aim, End, Design, Mean, Meaning.
- INTERCEDE**—plead in favor of. *See* Act *between*.
- INTERCHANGE**—mutual change, exchange, commutation, permutation, barter, reciprocity. *See* Change, Communion, Trade.
- INTEREST**—concern, regard, advantage, good benefit; influence; share, portion, part, participation; premium for the use of money. *See* Relate, Benefit, Care, Good, Part.
- INTERPRET**—*See* Explain.
- INTERRUPT**—break in upon, stop, hinder, disturb; interfere; divide, separate, break continuity, rescind, disjoin, disconnect. *See* Hinder, Prevent, Act *between*, Separate, Order, *put out of*.
- INTERVIEW**—mutual view or sight, meeting, conference, communication, oral discussion, consultation, convention, parley. *See* Calling *together*, Speech.
- INTIMACY**—close familiarity or friendship, fellowship, acquaintance, familiarity. *See* Acquaintance, Familiarity.
- INTOXICATION**—drunkenness, inebriety, ebriety, inebriation, tipsiness; infatuation. *See* Drunk, Infatuation.
- INTRICACY**—perplexity, complexity, perplexedness, complication, involution, entanglement, confusion; maze, labyrinth, meander. *See* Confused.
- INTRICATE**—entangled, involved, intertwined, complicated, perplexed, complex. *See* Confused, Entangle.
- INTRIGUE**—*See* Plot.
- INTRINSIC**—intrinsic, inward, internal, innate, true, genuine, real, essential, inherent. *See* Genuine, Constituent.
- INTRODUCE**—lead or bring in, usher in, present, prepare; begin, open to notice; preface, premise. *See* Begin, Preface.
- INTRODUCTORY**—serving to introduce, preparatory, initiatory, preliminary, prefatory, proemial, prelude, prelusive, previous, antecedent, prefixed. *See* Going *before*, Preface.
- INTRUDE**—thrust one's self in, obtrude, come, go in or enter uninvited or unwelcomed; *unlawfully*, encroach, infringe, invade, intrench. *See* Go.
- INVALID**—weak, feeble, of no force, weight, or cogency, infirm, debilitated, sick, unwell, ill, indisposed; *in law*, having no force, effect, or efficacy, null, void;—*Invalid*, a person weak and infirm, sickly, or indisposed, valetudinarian. *See* Illness, Sick, Weak.

- INVENT**—come on by making, find out by making, devise, contrive; fabricate, forge, feign; discover. *See* Contrive, Discover, Find out, Lie.
- INVEST**—clothe, dress, array, adorn; clothe with office *or* authority, endow, endue, authorize; inclose, surround, besiege. *See* Beautify, Authority, *give*, Endow, Compass, Surround.
- INVIDIOUS**—looking on with an evil eye, envious, malignant, spiteful, rancorous, likely to incur ill-will *or* hatred, *or* provoke envy, offensive, provoking, irritating. *See* Malicious, Affronting.
- INVITE**—bid, call, ask, summon; allure, draw to, attract, tempt to come. *See* Ask, Bid, Call, Induce.
- INWARD**—*See* Intrinsic.
- ISSUE**—passing *or* flowing out, egress, outlet; sending out; event, consequence, effect, result, end, upshot; progeny, child *or* children. *See* Effect, End, Children, Offspring.
- ISSUE**—pass *or* flow out, emanate, spring, result, proceed, arise, emerge, flow, go out, rush out.
- JEALOUSY**—suspicion, fear, apprehension, caution, vigilance; rivalry, envy; indignation. *See* Fear.
- JEST**—gibe, jeer, sneer, scoff, mock, taunt; joke, fun, trick, game, sport, ridicule, laughter, laughing-stock, sportiveness, facetiousness, jocularly. *See* Frolic, Sport, Mirth, Gibe.
- JINGLE**—clink, ring, rattle, jangle, clang; crackle, decrepitate. *See* Sound.
- JOCULAR**—jocose, waggish, merry, given to jesting, facetious; sportive, not serious. *See* Merry, Lively.
- JOIN**—*See* Tie.
- JOINT**, *out of*—disjointed, dislocated, dismembered, disunited; unconnected, incoherent.
- JOURNEY**—*See* Excursion.
- JOVIAL**—*See* Merry.
- JOY**, *to profess*—congratulate, gratulate, felicitate; greet, compliment. *See* Rejoice.
- JOY**, *excessive*—ecstasy, rapture, transport, exultation. *See* Pleasure.
- JUDGE**—*See* Decider.
- JUDGMENT**—discernment, penetration, discrimination, sagacity, intelligence, discretion, prudence; determination, decision, sentence, award, adjudication; opinion, notion. *See* Decree, Sense, Sharpness, Thought, Understanding, Rule.
- JUST**—*See* Right, Reasonable.
- JUSTICE**—law, legality, right; equity, impartiality; retribution; honesty, integrity. *See* Honesty, Correct, Unjust, Law.
- KEEN**—eager, vehement; sharp, severe, piercing, penetrating; bitter, acrimonious. *See* Severe, Sharp, Eagerness.
- KEEP**—hold, detain, retain, possess, occupy, reserve; preserve, save; protect, defend, guard; sustain, maintain, board, support; tend, have the care of, feed, pasture; practice, do, perform, observe, fulfill, obey; *back*, reserve, retain, withhold; *in*, conceal, restrain, curb; *from*, abstain, refrain, restrain; forbear, desist; *up*, maintain, continue, hinder from ceasing. *See* Do, Occupy, Maintain, Leave, Abstain, Delay.
- KILL**—deprive of life, murder, assassinate, slay, massacre, put to death, slaughter, butcher, destroy. *See* Destruction, Behead, Waste.
- KIN**—relation by birth, consanguinity, relation by marriage, affinity; relatives, kindred; kinsman, relation, relative. *See* Relationship.
- KIND**—species, sort, class, genus; order, set, rank. *See* Sort, Character, Order.
- KIND**—mild, tender, bland, indulgent; clement, gentle, compassionate, meek, benign, benignant, generous, benevolent, good; courteous, civil, civilized, obliging, complaisant, affable; gracious, lenient, humane. *See* Affectionate, Loving, Merciful, Obliging, Soft.
- KINDNESS**—good-will, benevolence, beneficence, benignity, tenderness, humanity; generosity, liberality, goodness; courtesy, politeness, urbanity, civility, complaisance, affability, favor. *See* Bounty, Charity, Affection, Mercy, Favor.
- KING**—*See* Majestic, Prince.
- KINGDOM**—realm, state, territory, country; empire; nation, inhabitants *or* population; *in natural history*, division; region, tract; reign of the Messiah, heaven; government, rule, sovereignty, supreme administration. *See* Government, Dominion, Country.
- KISS**—touch with the lips, salute, embrace, touch gently, caress. *See* Embrace.

KNIT—*See* Tie.

KNOT—*See* Tie.

KNOW—*See* Understand, Wise.

KNOWLEDGE—learning, erudition, letters, science; wisdom, skill; acquaintance, notice; information; *of all things*, omniscience. *See* Learning, Foresight.

LABOR—*See* Work.

LAMENT—*See* Grieve.

LANGUAGE—human speech, tongue, speech; dialect, idiom; solecism; phraseology, diction, expression. *See* Speech.

LARGE—big, great, huge, of great size, spacious, wide, roomy, capacious, extensive, comprehensive, copious, ample, abundant, plentiful, diffusive, broad, extended, liberal. *See* Big, Immense, Abounding, Roomy, Great, Size.

LARGER, *make*—magnify, augment, enlarge, increase, aggrandize, extend. *See* Great, *make*, Increase.

LASTING—continuing, enduring, remaining; durable, permanent, diuturnal; inveterate. *See* Abide, Stay.

LAUGH *at*—ridicule, banter, rally, deride, mock, fleer, grin, leer, scoff, gibe, jeer. *See* Gibe, Scoff, Reproach.

LAUGHABLE—exciting laughter or merriment, risible, ludicrous, ridiculous, comic, comical, sportive, odd, droll, burlesque, mirthful. *See* Jocular, Amusing, Odd, Ridicule.

LAVISH—prodigal, wasteful, wanton, profuse, extravagant. *See* Waste, Spend, Extravagance, Expense.

LAW—*See* Decree, Order, Command, Justice.

LAY *hold of*—grasp, catch, snatch, seize, gripe, fasten on, clutch; *open*, open, make bare, uncover, show, expose, reveal; spread on, dilate, expand, extend; *down*, deposit, resign, give up, quit, relinquish, surrender, offer, advance; *up*, hoard, store, treasure, reposit, provide, previously; *out*, expend, plan, dispose in order, exert; *to*, charge upon, impute, set to the account of, attribute. *See* Seize, Swell, Place, Catching, Show, Spread, Give, Count, Reckon, Accuse.

LAZY—sluggish, indolent, slothful, idle, listless, inert, inactive, supine; slow. *See* Careless, Idle, Slow, Dull.

LEAD—guide, conduct, direct; *away*, abduce, draw, entice, allure, attract, decoy,

seduce; induce, persuade, prevail on, influence, bias, incline. *See* Induce, Guide, Tempt, Lean.

LEAGUE—confederacy, alliance, national compact, covenant, truce, combination, coalition, union. *See* Alliance, Combine, Band.

LEAN—wanting flesh, meager, not fat, thin, attenuated, wasted, emaciated; not rich, destitute, bare, barren, jejune. *See* Bare, Thin.

LEAN—incline, propend, tend toward, bend. *See* Bend.

LEARN—*See* Scholar, Hear.

LEARNING—erudition, letters, science, literature, acquired knowledge, art. *See* Knowledge.

LEAVE—*See* Remains.

LEAVE—permission, allowance, license, liberty, consent, approval, assent; *a taking*, farewell, valediction, adieu, parting. *See* Approbation, Let.

LEAVE—withdraw, depart from, quit; for-sake, desert, abandon, relinquish; be-queath, give by will; *off*, desist, withhold, discontinue, refrain, forbear, hold, cease, stop; *out*, omit, pass by, neglect. *See* Abandon, Give up, Ceasing, Keep, Abstain.

LESSEN—make less, diminish, reduce, decrease, abate, liquidate; palliate, extenuate; *in value or worth*, depreciate, undervalue, derogate, deteriorate, disparage, detract, decry, traduce, degrade, lower; *become* less, abate, decrease, diminish, shrink; subside. *See* Lower, Gloss, Humble, Slacken, Allay.

LET—*See* Hinderance.

LET—permit, suffer, allow, give leave or power; lease, demise; retard, hinder, impede. *See* Allow, Leave, Hinderance.

LEWD—*See* Lust, Loose.

LIBERTY, *being deprived of*—restraint, confinement, imprisonment, incarceration, captivity, bondage, thralldom, slavery, servitude, enslavement. *See* Custody, Privilege, Freedom, Confine.

LIE or LEAN—*See* Lean.

LIE—falsehood, untruth, mendacity, fabrication, fiction, fib, invention. *See* Falsehood.

LIFE—vitality, liveliness, sprightliness, vivacity, vivaciousness, animation, spirit. *See* Lightness of manner, Spirit, Warmth, Animate.

- LIFELESS**—deprived of life, dead, destitute of life, inanimate, exanimate; heavy, dull, inactive, vapid; torpid. *See* Dead, Dull, Inanimate, Flat.
- LIFT**—elevate, raise, erect, exalt, elate. *See* Heighten.
- LIGHT**—*See* Enlighten.
- LIGHTNESS of manner**—levity, giddiness, gayety, unsteadiness, inconstancy, changeableness, mutability, vanity, freak, flightiness, volatility, buoyancy, elasticity, animation, vivacity, vivaciousness; wantonness, lewdness, unchastity. *See* Life, Whim, Changeable, Loose.
- LIKE**—alike, identical, equal, similar, uniform, resembling; probable, likely. *See* Equal, Same.
- LIKENESS**—resemblance, similarity, form, external appearance; similitude, simile; representation, copy, counterpart; image, picture, effigy, statue, *See* Comparison, Effigy, Example, Appearance.
- LIMIT**—*See* Bound.
- LIMITED**—bounded, finite, terminable, determinate, circumscribed, restrained, confined, restricted; qualified, narrow. *See* Definite, Narrow, Bound.
- LINK**—*See* Mark.
- LINKING together**—connection, concatenation, succession, consecution, chain, train, series. *See* Follow, Chain.
- LISTEN**—*See* Hear.
- LIVELIHOOD**—means of living, support of life, living, subsistence, maintenance, sustenance, sustentation, support. *See* Food, Living.
- LIVELY**—brisk, vigorous, vivacious, animated, spirited, sprightly, sportive, blithe, merry, cheerful, mirthful, jocund, gay, airy; humorous, facetious, witty, jocular, jocose; strong, energetic. *See* Active, Gay, Merry, Jocular, Quick, Spirit.
- LIVING, ecclesiastical**—benefice, vicarage, parsonage, rectory; incumbency; preferment, endowment. *See* Livelihood.
- LIVING in the same age with another**—coeval, of the same age, of equal age, coetaneous; *at the same time*, contemporary or cotemporary, contemporaneous, coexistent. *See* Time.
- LOAD**—*See* Burden.
- LOFTY**—*See* High, Great.
- LOTTER**—linger, move slowly or idly, lag, stay behind, delay, be dilatory, spend time idly, saunter. *See* Delay.
- LONELY**—solitary, retired, sequestered, secluded, ascetic, lone, lonesome, unfrequented, deserted, dull, gloomy. *See* Dull, Alone, Desolate.
- LOOK**—*See* Appearance.
- LOOK**—see, behold, view, eye, glance, peep, observe; appear, seem; face, front; *after*, attend, tend, take care of; *for*, expect, seek, search; *into*, inspect, observe, examine, consider; *on*, regard, esteem, consider, view, conceive of, think, be a mere spectator. *See* Glance, Appear, Search, Care.
- LOOKER-ON**—beholder, spectator, observer.
- LOOSE**—unbound, untied, unsewed; not tight or close, not dense or compact; not concise, lax, not precise or exact, vague, indeterminate, remiss; unconnected, rambling; dissolute, saturnalian, wanton, lewd, lustful, unrestrained, unchaste, licentious, lax. *See* Abandoned, Lust, Careless, Lightness.
- LOP**—*See* Cut off, Maim.
- LORD**—*See* Master.
- LORD'S SUPPER**—communion, sacrament, eucharist.
- LOSS**—damage, detriment. *See* Injury, Hurt.
- LOT**—*See* Chance, Clergy.
- LOUD**—having a great sound, high-sounding, altisonant, obstreperous, streperous, noisy, clamorous, vociferous, vehement, turbulent, tumultuous, blustering; emphatical, impressive. *See* Tumultuous, Noise.
- LOVE**—*See* Affection.
- LOVE, inclined to**—amorous, fond, doting, loving; *in love*, enamored, smitten; *relating to*, amatory, amatorial, amatorios. *See* Loving.
- LOVER**—one who loves, wooer, sweetheart, suitor, beau, swain; amateur.
- LOVING**—enamored, amorous; fond, affectionate, attached. *See* Affectionate, Kind.
- LOW**—not high, humble; deep; dejected, depressed; mean, abject, grovelling, base, dishonorable; feeble, weak, exhausted; moderate; plain, simple, as *diet*. *See* Humble, Grave, Weak, Flat, Faint.
- LOWER**—cause to descend, let down, take or bring down, reduce, humble, disgrace, humiliate, degrade, debase, abase, depress. *See* Humble, Abase, Lessen, Damp.

- LOWLINESS**—freedom from pride, humility, humbleness, self-abasement, modesty, unworthiness, penitence, submission, submissiveness. *See* Humble.
- LOWNESS of spirits**—dejection, depression, despondency, melancholy, hypochondria, low-spiritedness; *in rank* or *state*, humiliation, degradation, debasement, abasement, reduction. *See* Despair, Disgrace.
- LUCK**—*See* Chance.
- LUCKY**—fortunate, successful, prosperous, favorable. *See* Fortunate.
- LURE**—*See* Tempt, Induce, Entangle.
- LUST**—longing desire, desire, passion, concupiscence, lusting, carnal appetite, unlawful desire, lasciviousness, salaciousness, salacity, lecherousness, lechery, lubricity, incontinence, incontinency, unchastity, evil propensity, depraved affections and desires. *See* Desire, Loose.
- LUSTY**—fat, corpulent, stout, robust, vigorous, healthful, able of body; bulky, large. *See* Fatness, Strong.
- LUXURY**—free or extravagant indulgence in the pleasures of the table, voluptuousness, sensuality; epicurism, sensual enjoyments; dainty, delicious food or drink; any thing delightful to the senses. *See* Glut, Drunk, Pleasure, Feast.
- MACHINE**—*See* Instrument.
- MAD**—*See* Foolish.
- MADNESS**—disorder of the intellect or reason, distraction, derangement, insanity, insaneness, lunacy, delirium, mania, phrenzy or frenzy, franticness, mental aberration; extreme folly, headstrong passion and rashness; wildness of passion, rage, fury. *See* Folly, Possession, Rage.
- MAIM**—deprive of the use of a limb, lame, cripple, mangle, mutilate, injure, hurt. *See* Mangle, Cut off, Injure, Hurt.
- MAINTAIN**—assert, vindicate. *See* Keep, Support.
- MAJESTIC**—august, stately, dignified, magnificent, grand, splendid, pompous, elevated, lofty; princely, royal, regal, kingly, noble; magisterial. *See* Grand, High, Great.
- MAKE**—constrain, compel; form, fashion, mold, contrive. cause to exist, produce, create, compose, constitute, construct, establish; do, perform, execute, effect, cause; raise, gain, collect; *over*, transfer, convey, assign, alienate; *out*, learn, discover, obtain, prove, evince, find or supply. *See* Force, Form, Contrive, Do.
- MALICE**—extreme enmity, rancor, malevolence, malignity, malignancy, grudge, spite, pique, ill-will. *See* Enmity, Hatred, Envy, Spite.
- MALICIOUS**—harboring ill-will or enmity, malevolent, malignant, malign, evil-minded, evil, wicked, fiendish, fiend-like, diabolical, infernal, hellish, stygian, devilish, spiteful. *See* Hateful, Invidious, Wicked.
- MANGLE**—lacerate, tear, rend, mutilate, maim. *See* Maim, Worry.
- MANNER**—*See* Appearance, System, Way.
- MANNERS**—morals, habits; behavior. *See* Custom, Behavior, Civility.
- MANY**—manifold, multiform, several, divers, sundry, various, numerous.
- MARGIN**—*See* Brink, Edge.
- MARK**—line, incision, impression, print, stamp; note, sign, symptom, indication, token; trace, vestige, footstep, footprint, track; *of disgrace*, brand, stigma, badge. *See* Character, Emblem.
- MARK**—draw a visible line, stamp, impress, print, imprint; note, notice, observe, remark; heed, attend, regard. *See* Impress, Hear, Denote.
- MARKET**—*See* Trade.
- MARRIAGE**—matrimony, wedlock; nuptials, wedding; *relating to*, connubial, conjugal, matrimonial, nuptial, hymeneal, hymenean. *See* Espoused, Relationship.
- MARTIAL**—warlike, military, soldier-like, brave, given to war; suited to battle.
- MASK**—*See* Cloak.
- MASS**—*See* Medley.
- MASTER**—possessor, proprietor, owner; ruler, director, governor, head, chief, principal, superior, controller, lord; teacher, tutor, instructor, preceptor, professor. *See* Chief, Scholar.
- MAXIM**—*See* Aphorism.
- MAZE**—*See* Intricacy.
- MEAN**—wanting dignity, low, vulgar, low minded, base, spiritless, contemptible, despicable; of little value, humble, poor; sordid, miserly, penurious, niggardly. *See* Low, Gross, Contemptible, Poor, Saving, Sneaking, Miserly, Sorry.
- MEAN**—have in mind or view, intend,

- purpose, design, contemplate; signify, indicate, express, imply, import, denote. *See* Design, Denote, Betoken.
- MEANING**—signification, significance, import, sense, intendment, intention, tendency, aim, purpose. *See* Intention, Aim, Sense.
- MEANS**, *instrument of effecting any purpose*—income, revenue, resources, substance, estate; organ; *that offer*, expedient, alternative, resource, medium; moyen. *See* Choice, Medium, Way.
- MECHANIC**—artisan, artist, artificer, operative, workman, journeyman.
- MEDITATE**—*See* Think.
- MEDIUM**—middle, mean; mediocrity, moderateness, moderation, temperateness, temperance. *See* Way, Means, Mildness.
- MEDLEY**—mingled and confused mass, mixture, confusion, mass, hotchpotch, heterogeneousness, diversity, variety, miscellany.
- MEET**—fit, prepared, suitable, proper, qualified, convenient, adapted. *See* Fit.
- MEET**—come together, come face to face, confront, encounter, come in contact, join; come to, find, light on, receive; assemble, congregate, collect, concentrate, group, muster, embody. *See* Call *together*, Collection, Crowd, Find.
- MELANCHOLY**—*See* Sad, Doleful.
- MEMOIR**—personal history, life, personal narrative *or* chronicle, history, narrative, narration, chronicle, written account, register of facts, recital. *See* Chronicle, Story, History.
- MERCENARY**—that may be hired or sold, venal, hireling, hired, purchased, sold; greedy of gain, mean, selfish. *See* Mean.
- MERCHANTISE**—*See* Goods, Trade, Buy.
- MERCIFUL**—having *or* exercising mercy, clement, compassionate, humane, tender, lenient, benign, benignant, indulgent, not cruel, pitiful. *See* Mildness, Kind.
- MERCY**—*See* Grace.
- MERCY**—grace; benevolence, tenderness, mildness, pity *or* compassion, or clemency exercised toward offenders; clemency, lenity, leniency, humanity, benignity, compassion, pity. *See* Kindness, Pity, Mildness.
- MERRY**—gay and noisy, jovial, exhilarated, cheerful, mirthful, joyful, sprightly, joyous, lively, gay, vivacious, blithe, blithe-
some, jocund, sportive, festive, convivial, social, sociable. *See* Convivial, Lively, Glad, Gay, Jocular, Cheerfulness.
- MESSAGE**—verbal *or* written notice sent, errand, mission, commission, embassy, dispatch, communication, mandate, order. *See* Order, Command.
- MILD**—*See* Kind, Merciful.
- MILDNESS**—softness, gentleness, suavity, placidity, blandness, tenderness, mercy, clemency; moderateness. *See* Mercy, Kindness, Peace, Medium.
- MIMIC**—imitator, buffoon, zany, merry-andrew, jester, mountebank, fool. *See* Fool, Blockhead, Coxcomb, Imitate.
- MIND**—*See* Intellectual, Thoughtful.
- MINGLE**—*See* Mix.
- MINISTER**—chief servant, agent, officer, official, magistrate, delegate, ambassador, envoy, pastor. *See* Clergyman, Servant, Assist.
- MIRTH**—social merriment, hilarity, noisy gayety, jollity, jolliness, jocoseness, jocularly, jocundity, jocundness, festivity, joviality, conviviality, sociality, sociability; joy, gladness, cheerfulness. *See* Cheerfulness, Joy, Pleasure, Jest, Sport.
- MISCARRIAGE**—failure, mishap; ill conduct, evil *or* improper behavior, misbehavior; abortion, untimely birth. *See* Misdeed, Behavior.
- MISDEED**—evil deed, wicked action, fault, transgression, trespass, offense, misbehavior, crime. *See* Miscarriage, Fault, Iniquity.
- MISER**—extremely covetous person, sordid wretch, avaricious fellow, very parsimonious creature, curmudgeon, niggard, churl. *See* Money.
- MISERLY**—very covetous, avaricious, sordid, niggardly, narrow, parsimonious, mean, churlish, curmudgeonly. *See* Mean, Narrow.
- MISFORTUNE**—ill-fortune, ill-luck, adversity, calamity, disaster, affliction, distress, mischance, evil *or* cross accident, mishap, misadventure. *See* Trouble, Fortune.
- MISTAKE**—error, misconception, misunderstanding; slip, hallucination, fault; accident. *See* Fault, Oversight, Deceive.
- MISUSE**—ill-use, use ill *or* improperly, use to a bad purpose, wrong, injure; abuse, treat ill. *See* Abuse, Injure.

MIX—*See* Medley.

MOB—*See* Crowd.

MOCK—*See* Laugh at.

MODEST—restrained by a sense of propriety, not forward *or* bold, not presumptuous *or* arrogant, not boastful, bashful, diffident, reserved; not loose, not lewd, chaste, pure, vestal, virtuous; moderate, not excessive *or* extreme, not extravagant. *See* Pure, Chasteness, Shameless, Loose.

MOIST—*See* Soak.

MOMENT—second, instant; importance, etc. *See* Importance, Transitory.

MONEY—coin, stamped metal, gold, silver, copper, cash; specie, bank notes *or* bills, finance, exchequer.

MORALS—*See* Manners.

MORTAL—subject to death, destined to die; deadly, fatal, causing death, bringing death; human, terrestrial, earthly, mundane; perishable, fleeting, evanescent. *See* Deadly, Transitory.

MOUNT—*See* Go.

MOURN—*See* Grieve.

MOUTH—*See* Speech.

MOVE—*See* Go, Stir.

MOVE—impel, carry, convey, draw; excite, affect, touch pathetically, agitate, rouse, incite, instigate, prompt, stir, actuate, urge, persuade, induce, prevail on. *See* Induce, Animate, Stir, Shake, Awaken, Go.

MOVE *round*—revolve, circumsolve, turn, circumscribe, circulate; wheel, whirl, twirl, twist, reel. *See* Twist, Surround.

MUCH, *too*—excess, exuberance. *See* Excess, Luxuriance.

MURDER—*See* Kill.

MUTUAL—*See* Return like for like.

NAKED—not covered, bare, nude, uncovered, unclothed, undressed; unarmed, defenseless, open, exposed; plain, evident, undisguised. *See* Bare, Open.

NAME—appellation, appellative, title, denomination, designation; reputation, repute, character, credit, estimation; renown, fame, honor, celebrity, eminence, praise, distinction; remembrance, memory; authority, behalf, part; appearance only, sound only, not reality. *See* Fame, Praise.

NAME—call, give name to, denominate, entitle, characterize, style, term, designate, nominate. *See* Call.

NARROW—of little breadth, not wide *or* broad, strait, confined, limited, contracted, covetous, not liberal *or* bountiful; close, near, accurate, scrutinizing. *See* Miserly, Limited.

NATURAL—implanted by nature, inborn, innate, ingenerate, inbred; inherent; native, indigenous. *See* Born.

NAUSEA—sea-sickness, sickness, qualm, loathing, disgust, squeamishness. *See* Disgust, Sick.

NEAR—*See* Neighborhood, Narrow.

NECESSARY—that must be, that can not be otherwise, essential, indispensable, requisite, needful, fit; expedient, desirable; wanted, required; unavoidable. *See* Fit, Constituent.

NECESSITY—what must be; irresistible power, compulsive force; want, need, occasion, requirement, indispensable-ness; extreme indigence, pinching poverty, pressing need, distress, exigency, emergency; unavoidableness, inevitableness. *See* Destiny, Poorness, Want, Occasion, Trouble, Obligation.

NEED—*See* Necessity.

NEEDLE—*See* Sharp.

NEGLECT—omission, forbearance to do, inadvertence, oversight; negligence, inattention, carelessness, disregard, remissness, indifference, recklessness, apathy, unconcern. *See* Oversight, Apathy.

NEGLECT—omit; forbear to do *or* use; slight, contempt, disregard, not to notice. *See* Despise, Shun.

NEIGHBORHOOD—a place near, vicinity, vicinage, proximity, adjacency. *See* Near, Nigh.

NERVE—*See* Strong.

NET—*See* Snare.

NEWS—tidings, recent account, fresh information, intelligence.

NICE—soft, delicate, tender, dainty, fine, sweet, delicious; accurate, exact, precise, methodical, correct, particular, scrupulous, distinguishing. *See* Dainty, Correct, Squeamish, Luxury.

NIGH—*See* Neighborhood.

NIGHT—*See* Darkness.

NOBLE—*See* Generous, Great.

NOBILITY—noblesse, noblemen, nobles, aristocracy, oligarchy, barons, patricians, lords, peers, grantees, optimacy; dignity, grandeur. *See* Grand, Greatness, Government.

NOISE—*See* Sound, Jingle.

NOISE—sound, murmur, creak; cry, outcry, clamor, vociferation. *See* Cry, Loud.

NOMENCLATURE—list *or* catalogue of words, vocabulary, schedule, etc. *See* Dictionary, Catalogue.

NOTED—set down in writing; observed, noticed, notorious; remarkable, conspicuous, eminent, famous, celebrated, distinguished, renowned, illustrious, extraordinary. *See* Famous.

NOTICE—observe, see, regard, attend, heed, mind, remark, mention, mark, note. *See* Mark, Perceive, Hear.

NOURISH—nurture, cherish, foster, support, maintain, encourage; educate, instruct. *See* Support, Foster.

NOVICE—*See* Ignorant.

NUMB—benumbed, deprived of sensation, torpid, chill, motionless, stupefied.

NUMBER—*See* Count.

OBEDIENT—disposed to obey, submissive, obsequious, complaint, humble, tractable, docile, dutiful, respectful. *See* Humble.

OBJECT—oppose, except to, gainsay, deny, controvert, dissent. *See* Oppose, Gainsay, Cavil, Aim, Refuse.

OBLIGATION—duty; compulsion, force, coercion, necessity. *See* Debt, Necessity, Force.

OBLIGE—obligate, engage, constrain, compel, bind, do a favor to, favor, serve, assist, please, gratify. *See* Force, Please, Assist.

OBLIGING—binding, constraining, compelling; kind, complaisant, courteous, civil, affable. *See* Kind, Amiable, Officious.

OBLIQUE—*See* Crooked.

OBSTACLE—what opposes, what stands in the way, obstruction, hinderance, let, impediment. *See* Difficulty, Hindrance, Let.

OBSTINACY—fixedness in opinion *or* resolution, stubbornness, pertinacity, persistence, persistency, inflexibility, contumacy, perverseness, refractoriness, intractableness, obdurateness, obduracy.

OBSTINATE—fixed in opinion *or* resolution, stubborn, inflexible, refractory, contumacious, pertinacious, perverse, obdurate, unyielding, resolute, opiniated, headstrong, heady. *See* Crooked, Unwilling, Averse.

OCCASION—falling, happening *or* coming to, occurrence, casualty, incident; opportunity, convenience, favorable time, season *or* circumstances; incidental need, casual exigency, necessity, need. *See* Cause, Necessity, Chance.

OCCUPY—take possession; keep in possession, possess, hold *or* keep for use: take up, cover *or* fill; employ, use; maintain; invest. *See* Keep, Maintain, Possession.

ODD—not even *or* equal; singular, extraordinary, strange, eccentric, irregular, anomalous, particular, uncommon; fantastic, fantastical, whimsical, comic, comical, droll, queer, ludicrous, funny, laughable, burlesque. *See* Amusing, Fanciful, Laughable, Eccentric.

ODE—*See* Sing.

OFFEND—displease, make angry, affront, vex, insult, mortify, shock, wound; pain, annoy, injure; transgress, trespass, violate. *See* Displease, Affront, Injure.

OFFENDER—one who offends, violator, transgressor, trespasser, criminal, malefactor, felon; culprit, delinquent, defaulter. *See* Crime.

OFFER—bring in the way, bring to *or* before, present, proffer, give, bestow, exhibit, tender; sacrifice, immolate; bid, propose. *See* Give, Kill, Bid.

OFFERING—sacrifice, oblation; presentation, tender; *a burnt*, holocaust.

OFFICE—duty, charge, trust, function, place, post, situation, station, rank, business, employment, occupation, agency. *See* State, Situation.

OFFICIOUS—kind, obliging; excessively forward in kindness; active, busy meddling, intermeddling, intrusive, impertinent, importunate. *See* Obliging, Active, Impertinent.

OFFSPRING—child *or* children, descendant *or* descendants, progeny, young, issue; propagation, generation; production. *See* Children, Issue, Increase.

OFTEN—oft, frequently, many times, not seldom, not rarely, repeatedly, constantly, continually.

OINTMENT—*See* Perfume.

OLD—advanced far in years *or* life, aged; decayed, not new *or* fresh; ancient, antique, olden; elderly, senile; antiquated, old-fashioned, obsolete. *See* Ancient, Ancestor.

OMEN—*See* Foretell.

ONE—*See* Alone.

ONSET—rushing *or* setting upon, violent attack, attack, charge, assault, encounter, storming. *See* Attack, Battle.

OPEN—*See* Spread.

OPEN *and free*—ingenuous, frank, fair, candid, sincere, free from reserve, disguise, equivocation *or* dissimulation, unreserved, undisguised, undissembling, artless; communicative. *See* Free, Fair, Art, *without*, Clear.

OPENING—breach, gap, aperture, cleft, rent, crack, crevice, fissure, cranny, chink, slit, chasm; cavity, cave, cavern, grotto, den; orifice, hole, perforation, bore, pore; avenue, passage, way, entrance, dawn, first appearance *or* visibility. *See* Gap, Way.

OPERATION—working, process, agency, action, effect; manipulation; movement. *See* Work, Proceeding, Effect.

OPINION—sentiment, idea, notion, judgment, settled persuasion. *See* Thought, Judgment, Conceit.

OPPOSE—put *or* set against, act against, resist, withstand, combat, oppugn, controvert, gainsay, contradict, deny, object to, except to. *See* Hinder, Gain-say, Object, Refuse.

OPPOSITE—*See* Cross, Inimical.

ORDAIN—set, settle, establish, institute, constitute, appoint, decree, order, prescribe; adjudge, adjudicate. *See* Fix, Appoint, Destiny, Form.

ORDER—regular disposition *or* methodical arrangement, regularity, rule, method, system, settled mode; rank, degree, class, division, species; series, succession, consecution, consecutiveness; religious fraternity; regular government *or* discipline. *See* Command, Decree, Arrangement, Order, System, Discipline, Kind, Course, Formality, Message.

ORDER—regulate, methodize, put in order, systemize, adjust, dispose, digest, class, classify, range, rank, arrange; direct, command. *See* Command, Class.

ORDER, *put out of*—disorder, break order, derange, confuse, disarrange, disturb, perplex, confound, displace, unsettle, ruffle, discompose, interrupt; *change the*, invert; reverse. *See* Unsettle, Disfigure, Interrupt, Confused.

ORDERLY—regular, methodical, systematic; well-regulated, not tumultuous; not unruly, peaceable. *See* Regular.

ORIGIN—first existence, original, commencement, beginning, rise, source, first cause, fountain-head, descent; grounds, foundation, base, basis; rudiments, elements; primitive, etymon, etymology. *See* Begin, Cause, Rise.

OUTRAGE—*See* Affront.

OUTWARD—outer, external, exterior, extrinsic, adventitious; extraneous; *in theology*, carnal, fleshly, corporeal, not spiritual. *See* Abroad.

OUTWEIGH—exceed in weight, overbalance, preponderate; exceed in value, influence, *or* importance. *See* Go.

OVERBEAR—bear down, overpower, subdue, oppress, overwhelm, suppress. *See* Conquer, Overcome.

OVERCOME—conquer, vanquish, subdue, subjugate, overpower, suppress; surmount, get the better of. *See* Beat, Defeat, Overbear.

OVERFLOW—flow over, inundate, cover with waters, deluge, overwhelm, cover. *See* Flow, Overbear, Water.

OVERRULE—influence *or* control by predominant power, dispense with, supersede, annul, reject. *See* Annul, Refuse.

OVERSIGHT—superintendence, watchful care, supervision, inspection; mistake, overlooking, omission, error, inadvertence, inattention, slight, accident. *See* Care, Mistake, Neglect.

OWN—acknowledge, avow, confess, not to deny, admit, recognize. *See* Recognize, Profess, Allow.

PACE—step, gait, stride; amble. *See* Step.

PAIN—uneasy sensation, uneasiness, distress, suffering; anguish, agony, torture, pang, torment; disquietude, anxiety, solicitude, grief, sorrow, remorse, compunction; *pains*, labor, work, toil. *See* Grief, Trouble, Bear, Repentance, Work.

PAINT—form a figure *or* likeness in colors, depict, represent, delineate, color, besmear, sketch, describe. *See* Color, Stain.

PALACE—*See* House.

PALATE—*See* Taste.

PALE—white *or* whitish, fair, wan, cadaverous, pallid, ghastly, deficient in color, not ruddy; not bright, not shining, dim. *See* Dull, Ghastly.

PALPITATE—beat gently, beat, flutter, pant, heave, gasp. *See* Beat, Flutter.

PARCH—*See* Burn, Hot.

PARDON—*See* Forgive.

PART—portion, piece, fragment, share, division, section, species, sort, class, member; concern, interest; side, party, faction; *parts*, qualities, powers, faculties, accomplishments; quarters, regions, districts. *See* Party, Interest, Rate, District.

PART—divide, parcel, separate, break, sever, disunite. *See* Separate, Cut *off*.

PARTICULAR—not general, individual, distinct, single, minute; special, especial, peculiar, exclusive, specific, principal, chief; odd, singular. *See* Correct, Odd.

PARTY—*See* Company, Faction, Plot.

PARTY—faction, clique, set, cabal, junto; side, company. *See* Company, Faction, Plot.

PASS—*See* Go, Way.

PASSED or PIERCED, *not to be*—impassable, impenetrable, impervious.

PASSIONATE—irascible, choleric, angry, irritable, hasty, impetuous; highly excited, vehement, warm; animated. *See* Angry, Hasty, Hot.

PASSIVE—suffering, enduring, patient, resigned; submissive, unresisting, not opposing, quiescent; unmoved, unprovoked. *See* Sufferance, Peaceable.

PATTERN—*See* Copy, Example.

PAUSE—make a short stop, stop, cease, intermit, delay, wait, forbear; *in uncertainty*, demur, hesitate, deliberate, waver, fluctuate. *See* Delay, Waver.

PAWN—*See* Pledge.

PAY—compensation, recompense, reward, remuneration, equivalent, wages, salary, allowance, stipend, hire. *See* Amends.

PEACE—quiet, tranquility, calm, calmness, quietness, ease, repose, rest, peacefulness, serenity, stillness, peaceableness, mildness. *See* Quiet, Mildness, Calm, Concord.

PEACEABLE—tranquil, quiet, undisturbed, unagitated, calm, serene, peaceful, mild, still, pacific. *See* Calm, Passive.

PECULIAR—*See* Particular.

PEER—*See* Nobility, Equal.

PEEVISH—*See* Fretful.

PENALTY—*See* Fine.

PENCIL—*See* Paint.

PERCEIVE—*See* See.

PERCEIVE—know by the senses, feel, see, discern, distinguish, know, understand,

notice, regard, observe. *See* Distinguish, Notice, Espy.

PERFECT—bring to perfection, complete, finish, consummate, fulfill, accomplish, achieve. *See* Finish, Bring *about*, Accomplish.

PERFORMANCE—execution, completion, doing, action, act, deed, thing done; composition, written book; *of some note*, exploit, achievement, feat, heroic act, deed of renown, great or noble achievement. *See* Accomplishment, Production, Work, Thing *done*.

PERFUME—*See* Smell.

PERISH—die, lose life, expire; wither, fade, decay, waste away, pine. *See* Die, Dead, Wasting.

PERPLEX—*See* Entangle, Worry.

PEST—plague, pestilence, epidemic, infection, bane, worrying, nuisance, annoyance. *See* Infection.

PETITION—request, supplication, prayer, suit, entreaty, solicitation. *See* Beg, Entreaty.

PILE—*See* Heap.

PIOUS—*See* Godly.

PRITH—*See* Strength.

PITABLE—exciting pity, piteous, pitiful, miserable, doleful, woeful, rueful. *See* Doleful, Unhappy.

PITY—commiseration, compassion, fellow-suffering, sympathy, condolence, mercy, humanity. *See* Feeling, Mercy.

PLACE—spot, site, position, situation, station; rank, order; seat, residence, mansion; office, employment; calling, occupation, condition; ground, room, stead; portion. *See* Office, Situation.

PLACE—put, set, lay, locate, posit, deposit, reposit; appoint, induct, establish, fix; invest, lend. *See* Order, Fix, Lay.

PLAGUE—*See* Pest.

PLAGUE—infest with disease, etc.; vex, tease, harass, trouble, embarrass, annoy, molest, torment, torture, tantalize, importune. *See* Worry, Weary, Importune.

PLAIN—*See* Clear.

PLAN—draught, form; scheme, project, design, device, contrivance, stratagem. *See* Design, Invent, Plot.

PLEASURE—joy, delight, gratification, luxury, enjoyment, comfort, delectation, agreeable sensations or emotions; will, choice, purpose, intention, command.

- favor. *See* Enjoyment, Gratitude, Joy, Mirth, Satisfaction, Luxury, Sport.
- PLEASURE, *one given to*—voluptuary, epicure, sensualist. *See* Luxury.
- PLEDGE—pawn, surety, hostage, security, mortgage, caution. *See* Security.
- PLEDGE—*See* Answerable *for*.
- PLENTY—*See* Enough.
- PLOT—conspiracy, intrigue, confederacy, combination, cabal, junto, party clique, set, coalition; device, machination, contrivance, scheme, stratagem. *See* Design, Contrive, Party, Plan, Combine.
- FLOW—*See* Till.
- PLUNDER—pillage, rapine, prey, booty, spoil; ruin, ravage, waste. *See* Raptacious, Waste.
- POISON—*See* Deadly.
- POLISH—*See* Beautify.
- POLITE—polished, refined, well-bred, elegant, graceful; courteous, complaisant, obliging, civil, urbane, affable, genteel, deferential. *See* Genteel, Awkward, Becoming.
- POLITENESS—polish *or* elegance of manners, gentility, good breeding, good manners, refinement, civility, courteousness, courtesy, urbanity, affability, complaisance, obliging attentions. *See* Civility, Attention.
- POMP—splendid procession, magnificence, parade, splendor, grandeur, state. *See* Procession, Show, Grand.
- POOR—needy, indigent, destitute, necessitous, distressed; barren, mean, jejune; depressed, low, dejected; *in spirit*, humble, contrite, abased in one's own sight by a sense of guilt. *See* Bare, Barren, Mean, Sorry.
- POORNESS—destitution, indigence, poverty, want, need, distress, necessity, exigency; meanness, lowness; barrenness, sterility. *See* Necessity, Want.
- POPPY—*See* Sleep.
- PORE—*See* Opening.
- PORTER—*See* Bear.
- PORTION—*See* Part.
- POSITIVE—set, laid down, expressed, direct, explicit; absolute, real, express, peremptory, arbitrary, despotic, dogmatical, confident. *See* Actual, Arbitrary, Flat.
- POSSESSION—occupancy, occupation, tenure, tenancy; thing possessed, land, estate, goods, etc.; madness, lunacy. *See* Occupy, Goods, Madness.
- POUR—*See* Melt, Flow.
- POWER—ability, strength, potency, force, energy, capacity, capability, puissance, cogency, efficacy, efficaciousness, efficiency; influence; command, rule, sway, authority, right of governing, dominion, domination, ascendancy; *royal*, royalty, scepter, crown. *See* Ability, Force, Influence, Dominion, Gift.
- POWER, *want of*—inability, disability, impotence, impotency, weakness, incapacity, inefficacy, inefficiency, insufficiency, inadequacy, incompetency, imbecility. *See* Weakness.
- POWERFUL—mighty, potent, strong, puissant, forcible, efficacious, influential, cogent, energetic, vehement, emphatic, intense. *See* Effect, *producing*, Prevailing, Strong, Able, Almighty.
- PRAISE—commendation, approbation, applause, encomium, eulogy, panegyric. *See* Approbation, Name.
- PRAISE—commend, approve, applaud, laud, extol, magnify, glorify, eulogize, panegyryze, do honor to. *See* Great, *make*.
- PRAISEWORTHY—deserving praise, commendable, laudable, approved.
- PRATTLE—*See* Talk.
- PRAY—*See* Beg, Entreat, Entreaty, Petition.
- PRECEPT—command, rule, doctrine, maxim, principle. *See* Command, Order.
- PREFACE—introduction, proem, preliminary, prelude. *See* Introductory, Introduce.
- PRESENT—*See* Gift, Reward, Give.
- PRESERVE—*See* Keep, Free.
- PRESS—*See* Embrace, Force.
- PRESSING—urging with force *or* weight, squeezing, constraining, crowding, embracing, distressing, forcing; urgent, importunate, emergent. *See* Important, Squeeze.
- PRETENSE—false appearance, pretext, excuse, delusion, imposture. *See* Color, Defense, Cloak.
- PRETTY—*See* Beautiful.
- PREVAILING—gaining advantage, superiority *or* victory, having effect, persuading, succeeding; predominant, prevalent, superior in power, efficacious; most general, epidemic, epidemical. *See* Powerful.
- PREVENT—go before, precede, anticipate; hinder, obstruct, intercept, impede, ob-

- viate, preclude. *See* Anticipate, Go, Hinder, Interrupt.
- PREY—*See* Plunder.
- PRICE—*See* Value, Sell.
- PRICK—*See* Stir.
- PRIDE—inordinate self-esteem, self-conceit, conceit, arrogance, haughtiness, hauteur, presumption, assumption, insolence, vanity; splendid show, ostentation. *See* Conceit, Proud, Show.
- PRIEST—*See* Ecclesiastic.
- PRINCE—sovereign, monarch, potentate, king, emperor, chief, ruler.
- PRIORITY—precedence, preference, pre-eminence. *See* Going before.
- PRISON—*See* Liberty, *being deprived of*.
- PRIVATE—*See* Secret.
- PRIVILEGE—immunity, exemption; benefit, advantage, favor, prerogative, right, claim, liberty. *See* Freedom, Benefit.
- PROCEEDING—process, procedure, movement, course, progress, progression; affair, matter, concern, transaction, suit, measure, step. *See* Course, Operation, Go.
- PROCESSION—cavalcade, triumph, ovation; train, retinue, suite. *See* Pomp, Victory.
- PROCLAIM—*See* Publish.
- PRODUCE—*See* Beget.
- PRODUCTION—that which is produced, produce, product; performance, composition, work. *See* Performance, Offspring.
- PROFESS—make open declaration of, avow, acknowledge, declare, asseverate. *See* Declare, Own.
- PROFIT—*See* Gain.
- PROFITABLE—yielding or bringing profit or gain, gainful, lucrative; beneficial, useful, advantageous. *See* Gain, Use.
- PROJECT—*See* Plan, Design.
- PROMISCUOUS—mingled, mixed, confused, undistinguished, indiscriminate, common. *See* Mixed, Confused, Common.
- PROMISE—binding declaration, assurance, guarantee, engagement, undertaking. *See* Warrant.
- PROOF—trial, essay, experiment, test; demonstration, conviction, satisfaction; testimony, attestation, evidence, certification; firmness, hardness, impenetrability. *See* Evidence, Trial.
- PROPERTY—quality, attribute; wealth, possessions, paraphernalia. *See* Quality, Goods, Riches.
- PROPHECY—*See* Foretell.
- PROROGUE—protract, prolong, defer, adjourn, delay, postpone. *See* Delay.
- PROSPER—favor, render successful; be successful, succeed; grow, increase, thrive, make gain. *See* Gain, Favor, Increase, Flourish, Happiness.
- PROTECT—cover, shield, defend, guard, preserve, secure, support, harbor, shelter, foster, cherish, countenance, patronize, encourage, sanction. *See* Covering, Defend, Harbor, Foster, Encourage.
- PROTECTION, *place for*—asylum, sanctuary; shelter, defense, refuge, retreat. *See* Defense, Security.
- PROUD—having inordinate self-esteem, self-conceited, conceited, vain, arrogant, haughty, supercilious, assuming, insolent; daring, presumptuous; grand, lofty, splendid, magnificent, ostentatious. *See* High, Grand, Pride.
- PROVE—try, test; evince, establish, ascertain, verify, demonstrate, manifest; certify, attest, evidence. *See* Proof, Evidence.
- PROVIDE—procure beforehand, get, furnish, supply. *See* Give.
- PRUDENT—*See* Wise.
- PRUNE—*See* Cut off.
- PRYING—inspecting closely, inquisitive, scrutinizing, searching, curious. *See* Search.
- PUBLIC, PUBLISH—*See* Common.
- PUBLISH—make known, divulge, disclose, promulgate, proclaim, discover, expose, declare, reveal, impart, communicate. *See* Discover, Public, Declare, Spread, Utter, Blaze.
- PUFF—*See* Swell.
- PULL—*See* Draw, Tear.
- PUNISH—*See* Discipline, Fine.
- PURGE—*See* Clean.
- PURSE—*See* Money.
- PUSH—*See* Drive.
- PUT—*See* Place.
- PUT down—baffle, repress, crush, quell, suppress, subdue, reduce, restrain; degrade, deprive, depose; confute, silence. *See* Baffle, Check, Delay.
- PUZZLE—perplex, embarrass, put to a stand, gravel, confound; bewilder, entangle. *See* Cross, Entangle, Worry.
- QUACK—empiric, charlatan, mountebank.
- QUAKE—*See* Shake, Fear.
- QUALIFICATION—endowment, acquirement; legal or requisite power; modification,

- restriction, limitation. *See* Accomplishment, Endow.
- QUALIFY**—fit for, furnish with; moderate, modulate, temper, humor, restrain, limit, modify, regulate. *See* Bound, Fit.
- QUALITY**—*See* Property.
- QUARREL**—wrangle, scold, petty fight, scuffle, dispute, contest, contention, brawl, broil, jar, jangle, altercation, tumult, feud, fray, affray, variance, difference, disagreement, breach. *See* Difference, Disagreement, Tumult, Insurrection.
- QUARRELING**—contention, dispute, disputation, caviling, discord, dissension, strife, faction, controversy, altercation, wrangling, debate, variance, difference, disagreement. *See* Difference, Quarrel, Faction.
- QUESTION**—*See* Ask, Search.
- QUICK**—alive, living; swift, hasty; speedy, prompt, expeditions, ready; active, nimble, agile, brisk, vigorous, lively, vivacious. *See* Hasty, Active, Lively, Ready, Sharp.
- QUICKEN**—make alive, vivify, revive, resuscitate; hasten, accelerate, expedite, dispatch, sharpen, stimulate, incite; cheer, reinvigorate. *See* Cheer, Animate, Hasten.
- QUICKNESS**—speed, velocity, swiftness, celerity, fleetness, rapidity, rapidness, nimbleness, briskness, alertness; expedition, dispatch; activity, promptness, agility, dexterity; acuteness, keen sensibility; sharpness, pungency; *of intellect*, acuteness, sharpness, sagacity, penetration, acumen, shrewdness. *See* Briskness, Sharpness, Eagerness.
- QUIET**—rest, repose, stillness, peace, ease, tranquility, calm, quietness. *See* Peace, Ease, Still, Silence, Subside.
- QUOTE**—*See* Adduce.
- RACE**—running, rapid course *or* motion, course, progress, movement; breed; lineage, family, house, descent; stock, dynasty, generation. *See* Course, Stock, House, Breed.
- RAGE**—violent anger, passion, fury, excitement, extreme violence; enthusiasm; extreme eagerness *or* passion. *See* Madness, Anger, Boil.
- RAISE**—*See* Lift.
- RAMBLE**—rove, wander, stroll, range, walk, ride *or* sail at random. *See* Excursion, Stray, Go, Wander.
- RANK**—*See* Order.
- RAPACIOUS**—given to plunder, seizing by force, greedy on seizing, ravenous, voracious, greedy, devouring. *See* Plunder, Greediness.
- RARE**—uncommon, not frequent, scarce, singular, choice, precious, usually excellent, incomparable, unique; *thin*, porous, not dense; nearly raw, imperfectly roasted *or* boiled. *See* Uncommon, Thin.
- RASH**—*See* Foolhardy.
- RASHNESS**—temerity, precipitance, precipitancy, precipitation, hastiness. *See* Hasty.
- RATE**—proportion, standard, ratio, quota, degree; price, amount; tax, sum. *See* Tax, Value, Count, Part.
- RAVE**—*See* Madness.
- RAW**—*See* Rare.
- RAY**—*See* Beam.
- READ**—*See* Collect.
- READY**—quick, apt, prompt, not hesitating; acute; expert, dexterous; prepared, fitted; willing, free, cheerful, disposed; being at the point, near, not distant; easy, facile, opportune, short. *See* Quick, Active, Clever, Free, Sharp, Briskness.
- REASONABLE**—rational, equitable, just, fair; not immoderate, moderate, tolerable, not excessive. *See* Fair, Just.
- REBELLIOUS**—seditious, mutinous. *See* Tumultuous.
- RECALL**—revoke, repeal. *See* Call back.
- RECALLED, REGAINED *or* REMEDIED, not to be**—irrevocable, irretrievable, irreversible, irrecoverable, irreparable, incurable, irremediable. *See* Call back, Recover.
- RECEIPT**—act of receiving, acceptance, acceptance, reception; discharge, acquittance; recipe, prescript, prescription. *See* Take, Pay.
- RECKON**—count, number, compute, calculate, estimate; esteem, account, repute. *See* Count, Pay.
- RECOGNIZE**—remember, notice, recollect. *See* Own, Mark.
- RECOVER**—get *or* obtain what was lost, regain, retrieve; restore, repair, recruit. *See* Recalled, *not to be*, Redeem.
- REDEEM**—purchase back, ransom, liberate, relieve, rescue, enfranchise, manumit,

- recover, deliver from, save; compensate, make amends for. *See* Free, Buy, Recover.
- REDRESS—relief, remedy, deliverance from wrong, injury or oppression; reparation. *See* Cure.
- REDUNDANT—*See* Abounding.
- REFER—relate, regard, respect; appeal, apply; allude, glance at, hint; direct; reduce. *See* Relate, Appeal, Hint, Apply, Consult.
- REFRESH—cool, allay heat; reinvigorate, give new strength to, revive, renovate, renew. *See* Cool, Animate.
- REFUGE—*See* Protection.
- REFUSE—reject, deny, decline, oppose, repel, rebuff, object. *See* Object, Oppose, Overrule, Remains.
- REGARD—*See* Respect, Interest.
- REGULAR—*See* Rule.
- REGULAR—conformed to a rule, methodical, systematic, orderly, exact, periodical. *See* Orderly, Formal.
- REIGN—*See* Govern.
- REJOICE—make joyful, gladden, exhilarate; exult, joy; gratulate, congratulate, felicitate. *See* Joy, Gladden.
- RELATE—tell, recite, rehearse, repeat, narrate, recount, recapitulate, detail, enumerate; refer, concern, respect, regard, appertain, interest, affect. *See* Tell, Explain, Describe, Refer.
- RELATIONSHIP—kindred, relation, alliance; affinity, consanguinity. *See* Kin, Marriage.
- RELIGION—godliness, piety, devotion, sanctity; system of faith and worship. *See* Holiness.
- REMAIN—*See* Dwell.
- REMAINS—that which is left, leavings, raspings, scrapings, relics, remnant, remainder, residue, refuse, scoria, dross; dead body, corpse, carcass. *See* Dregs.
- REMARK—notice, observation, annotation, note, comment, commentary. *See* Explanation, Comment.
- REMEMBER—*See* Recognize.
- RENOWN—*See* Fame.
- REPEAT—*See* Seek.
- REPENTANCE—sorrow, pain, grief, regret, penitence, contrition, compunction, remorse. *See* Pain, Grief.
- REPORT—*See* Fame.
- REPLY, *smart or witty*—repartee, retort.
- REPROACH—censure, find fault with, chide, reprove, upbraid, cast in the teeth, scold, rail, brawl, rate. *See* Blame, Abuse, Disgrace, Gibe.
- RESPECT—regard, attention, deference, consideration, esteem, estimation, honor; veneration, reverence. *See* Refer, Honor.
- RESPECT—hold in respect or estimation, esteem, value, regard, relate to; venerate, revere, reverence. *See* Refer, Value, Honor.
- REST—*See* Ceasing.
- RESTORING or RETURNING, *the act of*—restoration, rendition, restitution, retribution. *See* Amends.
- RETURN *of like for like*—retaliation, requital, reciprocation, reciprocity, mutuality, alternation. *See* Each, Other.
- REWARD—remuneration, recompense, compensation, requital, satisfaction, amends, guerdon; bribe; punishment. *See* Amends, Satisfaction, Gift.
- RICHES—wealth, opulence, affluence, possessions, mammon, substance. *See* Possession, Fortune.
- RIDICULE—contemptuous laughter, derision, burlesque; satire, irony, sarcasm. *See* Censure, Laughable.
- RIGHT—straight; just, equitable, fair, honest; fit, proper, suitable, becoming; lawful; true; correct; not left. *See* Fair, Fit, Correct.
- RIGID—*See* Severe.
- RING—*See* Surround, Jingle.
- RISE—*See* Go, Issue, Origin.
- RITE—*See* Form.
- RIVER—*See* Water.
- ROAD—*See* Way.
- ROLL—*See* Catalogue.
- ROOM—space, compass, extent, place, stead; apartment, chamber. *See* Place.
- ROOMY—spacious, large, wide, capacious. *See* Large, Immense.
- ROT—putrefy, corrupt, decay. *See* Corrupt.
- ROTTEN—putrid, putrefied, carious, decayed, corrupt; unsound, defective, treacherous, deceitful; fetid, stinking, rancid, ill-smelling. *See* Corrupt, Deceitful.
- ROUSE—*See* Stir.
- RUDE—*See* Barbarous, Impertinent.
- RULE—*See* Precept, Order, Decree.
- RUN—*See* Course.
- SACRED—*See* Holy.
- SAD—sorrowful, melancholy, mournful,

- dull, downcast, dejected, depressed, cheerless, doleful, trist, gloomy. *See* Dull, Doleful, Mourn, Cast *down*.
- SAFE—*See* Sure.
- SALUTE—salutation, greeting. *See* Kiss.
- SAME—*See* Equal, One, Individual.
- SANCTION—*See* Fix, Ordain.
- SATISFACTION—contentment, repose of mind; conviction; pleasure, gratification; amends, recompense, compensation, indemnification, atonement; payment, discharge. *See* Pleasure, Reward, Amends.
- SATISFY—suffice, content, gratify, please; pay to content, recompense, indemnify; free from doubt, suspense, *or* uncertainty; convince; pay, discharge. *See* Amends, *make*, Pay.
- SAUCY—*See* Fretful.
- SAVE—*See* Free, Redeem.
- SAVING—preserving, sparing, frugal, not lavish, economical, thrifty, parsimonious, excepting. *See* Mean.
- SAW—*See* Cut.
- SAY—*See* Speech, Tell, Aphorism.
- SCALE—*See* Climb.
- SCARCE—*See* Rare.
- SCARCITY—scarceness, deficiency, penury, dearth, famine; rareness, infrequency. *See* Want.
- SCATTER—*See* Spread, Dispel.
- SCENT—*See* Smell.
- SCHOLAR—learner, pupil, disciple, tyro; man of letters, doctor. *See* Follower, Master.
- SCIENCE—*See* Knowledge.
- SCOFF—*See* Laugh *at*, Disdain.
- SCOPE—*See* Aim.
- SCROLL—*See* Catalogue.
- SCRUPLE—*See* Doubt.
- SCULPTURE—*See* Carve.
- SEA—ocean, main, deep, wave, billow, surge. *See* Wave.
- SEAMAN—seafarer, sailor, mariner, tar, marine, sea-soldier; sea-robber, pirate, sea-freebooter.
- SEARCH—seeking, looking for, scrutiny, investigation, inquiry, examination, research, rummage, quest, inquest, pursuit. *See* Prying.
- SEARCH—look over *or* through, explore, rummage, examine, scrutinize, investigate, inquire, seek for, probe, pry. *See* Look.
- SECRET—hid, hidden, concealed, clandestine, unrevealed, occult, unseen, private, unknown, secluded, latent, mysterious, mystic. *See* Hide.
- SECT—*See* Heretic.
- SECURITY—protection, guard, defense, palladium, guarantee, fence, safety, certainty, deposit, pledge, mortgage. *See* Guard, Sure, Protection, Pledge.
- SEDIMENT—*See* Dregs.
- SEE—*See* Look.
- SEEK—*See* Look.
- SEIZE—*See* Take, Catching.
- SELL—*See* Buy, Merchandise, Trade.
- SEND—throw, cast, thrust, impel, drive, cause to go *or* pass, commission; *away*, dismiss, discard, discharge, dispatch, cause to depart; *forth or out*, produce, put *or* bring forth, emit, exhale; *on a special commission*, depute, delegate. *See* Cast, Throw.
- SENSE—sensation, perception, apprehension, discernment, judgment, faculty, intellect, reason, understanding; consciousness, conviction; meaning, import, signification. *See* Feeling, Judgment, Understanding, Meaning.
- SEPARATE—divided from, disjoined, disconnected, unconnected, not united, distinct, different, detached, disunited, apart, asunder. *See* Part, Individual, Unlike.
- SEPARATE—disunite, divide, sever, part, sunder, disconnect, detach, disjoin, disengage. *See* Part, Cut *off*, Distinguish, Interrupt.
- SERENE—*See* Calm.
- SERMON—*See* Speech, Dissertation.
- SERVANT—*See* Minister.
- SERVANT—one who serves, domestic, menial, drudge; help, assistant; *in Scripture*, slave, bondman, one used as an instrument. *See* Minister, Inferior, Instrument.
- SET—*See* Fix, Appoint.
- SET *apart*—dedicate, devote; consecrate, hallow, sanctify. *See* Apply.
- SETTLE—make permanent, fix, establish, determine, corroborate, confirm; marry; adjust, compose, tranquilize; regulate, arrange; colonize; liquidate, balance *or* pay. *See* Fix, Found, Still, Pay.
- SEVERE—rigid, harsh, stern, austere, not mild *or* indulgent, strict, hard, rigorous; grave, sober, sedate; afflictive, distressing, sharp, violent; biting, extreme; exact, critical, nice. *See* Rigid, Sharp, Difficult, Grave.

- SHADE**—*See* Darkness, Dull.
- SHAKE**—agitate, move, tremble, shudder, shiver, quiver, quake, totter. *See* Move, Trembling.
- SHAME**—*See* Disgrace.
- SHAMEFUL**—what brings shame *or* disgrace, scandalous, disgraceful, infamous, opprobrious, ignominious, injurious to reputation. *See* Disgrace.
- SHAMELESS**—destitute of shame, wanting modesty, impudent, brazen-faced, immodest, audacious, insensible to disgrace; indecent, indelicate. *See* Impudence, Modest.
- SHAPE**—*See* Form.
- SHARE**—*See* Part.
- SHARP**—keen, acute, not blunt, not obtuse; discerning, penetrating, sagacious, shrewd, quick, witty, ingenious; sour, acid, piercing, shrill; severe, harsh, rigid, cruel, biting, sarcastic, taunting, satirical; fierce, ardent, fiery, violent; keen, severe, pungent, painful, pricking, piquant. *See* Keen, Quick, Active, Severe, Ready.
- SHARPNESS**—keenness, acidity, sourness, acrimony, pungency, painfulness; acuteness, penetration, shrewdness, sagacity, discernment, quickness, ingenuity; keenness, edge, severity. *See* Sourness, Quickness, Judgment, Edge.
- SHIELD**—*See* Covering.
- SHIFT**—change, turning; expedient, resource, refuge, alternative; fraud, artifice, chicane, evasion, subterfuge, trick, turn. *See* Cheat, Trick.
- SHINE**—*See* Light.
- SHINE**—emit rays of light, radiate, give light, beam, glitter, coruscate, glisten, gleam, glare, sparkle. *See* Gleam, Blaze, Bright.
- SHOOT**—*See* Sprout, Bud.
- SHORE**—*See* Brink, Edge.
- SHORTER**, *made*—shortened, abridged, abbreviated, epitomized, condensed, contracted, curtailed, lessened, diminished. *See* Brief, Abridgment.
- SHOUT**—*See* Call.
- SHOW**—spectacle, exhibition, sight, representation; ostentation, parade, display, array, pomp; appearance, semblance, seeming, speciousness, plausibility. *See* Pomp, Appearance, Color.
- SHOW**—exhibit, present, display; make to know, direct, point out, indicate, manifest, prove, inform, instruct, teach, explain; disclose, discover, bestow, confer, afford. *See* Instruct, Discover, Declare, Direction.
- SHOWY**—making a great show, ostentatious, splendid, fine, gay, gaudy, glaring, pompous, sumptuous, grand, magnificent, stately. *See* Gay, Grand, Vain.
- SHUDDER**—*See* Shake, Fear.
- SHUFFLE**—prevaricate, equivocate, evade, quibble, cavil, sophisticate.
- SHUN**—avoid, keep clear of, eschew; evade, escape, elude; decline, neglect. *See* Neglect.
- SHUT**—*See* Close, Surround.
- SHY**—fearful of near approach, coy, reserved, not familiar; cautious, wary, careful; suspicious, jealous. *See* Careful, Jealousy.
- SICK**—sickly, ill, diseased, morbid; disgusted. *See* Illness, Invalid.
- SIDE**—*See* Edge.
- SIFT**—*See* Separate, Judge.
- SIGHT**—*See* See, Look.
- SIGN**—*See* Mark.
- SILENCE**—taciturnity; stillness, calmness, quiet, calm, repose, cessation; dumbness, muteness. *See* Calm, Quiet, Still.
- SILENT**—*See* Calm, Dumb.
- SILVER**—*See* Money.
- SIMPLE**—*See* Bare.
- SIN**—*See* Wicked, Crime, Violation, Debt, Depravity.
- SINCERE**—real, unfeigned, genuine, true, honest, undissembling, upright, uncorrupt; unvarnished, plain; frank. *See* Genuine, Honesty.
- SINGLE**—*See* Alone, Particular.
- SITUATION**—position, seat, location, site, state, condition, predicament, plight, case; place, office. *See* Place, Condition, State, Office.
- SIZE**—bulk, bigness, magnitude, greatness, extent. *See* Bigness, Fatness, Greatness.
- SKILL**—*See* Ability.
- SKIN**—*See* Flay.
- SLACKEN**—slack, make less tense, tight *or* severe, relax, remit; mitigate, diminish, abate, lower, relieve, unbend. *See* Lessen, Lower.
- SLANDER**—defamation, detraction, scandal, calumny, backbiting, aspersion; disgrace, reproach, disreputation, ill-name. *See* Disgrace, Contumely, Asperse.
- SLAUGHTER**—massacre, carnage, murdering, butchery. *See* Destruction, Kill.

- SLAVE**—*See* Liberty, *being deprived of*.
SLEEP—*See* Doze.
SLEEPY—drowsy, lethargic, inclined to sleep; causing *or* inducing sleep, soporific, soporiferous, narcotic, opiate, dormitive, somnific, somniferous, anodyne, sedative, composing. *See* Doze.
SLENDER—*See* Thin.
SLIP—*See* Deceive, Mistake.
SLOW—tardy, dilatory, sluggish, tedious. *See* Lazy, Dull.
SLY—cunning, deceitful, artful, insidious, crafty, wily, circumventive, subtle, subtle. *See* Cunning, Deceitful.
SMELL—*See* Sweet-smelling.
SMOOTH—*See* Soft, Beautify.
SNAKE—*See* Serpent.
SNARE—*See* Entangle.
SNARLING—growling, grumbling angrily, cynical, snappish, waspish.
SNATCH—*See* Seize.
SNEAKING—creeping away slyly, stealing away; crouching, cringing, servile, obsequious, mean, pitiful; meanly, parsimonious, covetous, niggardly. *See* Mean, Miserly.
SOAK—steep, imbrue, macerate, imbue, wet, moisten, drench.
SOBER—temperate; steady, serious, solemn, grave. *See* Abstaining, Grave.
SOFT—easily yielding to pressure, easily to be bent *or* led, flexible, supple, lithe, limber, flaccid, pliant, yielding, ductile, pliable, compliant, tractable, docile; malleable; gentle, mild, meek, kind, civil; smooth, flowing; easy, quiet. *See* Kind, Dainty, Allay, Ease, Weak.
SOIL—*See* Stain.
SOLE—*See* Alone.
SOLEMN—*See* Grave.
SOLID—hard, firm, compact, stable, strong, massive; real, substantial, sound, valid, true, just; entire, whole. *See* Firm, Strong, Thick.
SOLITARY—living alone, desolate. *See* Alone, Desolate, Lonely.
SOPHISTRY—fallacious reasoning, chicane, chicanery, sophism, fallacy. *See* falsehood.
SORRY—grieved, pained, afflicted, affected, hurt, mortified, vexed, chagrined; poor, mean, vile, worthless. *See* Mean, Poor, Grieve.
SORT—*See* Kind, Character.
SOUL—*See* Spirit, Mind.
SOUND—*See* Jingle, Bound back.
SOUND—*See* Whole.
SOUR—*See* Sharp.
SOURNES—acidity, acidness, tartness, sharpness; *of manner*, asperity, harshness, acrimony. *See* Sharpness.
SOURCE—*See* Origin.
SPARING—*See* Saving.
SPEAK—*See* Tell.
SPEAK to—accost, address; *with*, talk, converse, discourse, commune. *See* Talk, Utter, Unspeakable.
SPEECH—language; oration, philippic, harangue, address, discourse; solecism. *See* Language, Speech, Talk, Interview.
SPEND—lay out, dispose of, part with; expend, consume, waste, squander, exhaust, drain; pass; harass, fatigue. *See* Expensive, Waste.
SPIRIT—*See* Life, Lively, Active.
SPIRITUAL—immaterial, incorporeal; mental, intellectual; sacred, ecclesiastical; ethereal, ghostly; godly, holy. *See* Intellectual, Godly, Holy.
SPITE—hatred, spleen, rancor, malice, malignity, malevolence, gall; grudge, pique. *See* Malice, Hatred, Enmity, Envy.
SPLEEN—*See* Spite.
SPOIL—*See* Plunder.
SPOKE—*See* Beam.
SPORT—what diverts and makes merry, play, game, diversion, fun, drollery, frolic, waggery, waggishness; pastime, recreation; amusement, entertainment; mock, mockery, contemptuous mirth; diversion of the field, as fowling, hunting, fishing. *See* Mirth, Jest, Frolic, Pleasure, Amusing, Lively.
SPOT—*See* Stain, Blemish, Blameless.
SPREAD abroad—scatter, disperse, distribute, diffuse, dispense, circulate, propagate, divulge, publish, disseminate; *out*, open, expand, unfold, unfurl. *See* Dispel, Publish, Open, Lay, Swell, Unfold.
SPRING—*See* Issue.
SPROUT—*See* Bud.
SPUR—*See* Stir.
SPURIOUS—not genuine, counterfeit, supposititious, false, fictitious, deceitful, adulterate; illegitimate, bastard. *See* Genuine, *not*, Bastard, Vain, Law.
SPURN—*See* Despise.
SQUEAMISH—fastidious, over-nice, over-scrupulous. *See* Nice.
SQUEEZE—press, gripe; oppress, harass,

- crush; hug, embrace closely; *out*, extort, express, extract. *See* Compress, Press.
- STABLE—*See* Strong.
- STAGGER—walk unsteadily, reel, totter, vacillate; fail; hesitate. *See* Doubt, Wave, Stammer.
- STAIN—discolor, maculate, blot, spot, foul, soil, pollute, blemish, sully, tarnish, taint; dye, tinge. *See* Blot, Blemish, Corrupt, Disgrace, Color.
- STAIN, *without*—immaculate, pure, spotless, untainted, innocent, unstained, unblemished, unpolluted, irreproachable, unsullied, untarnished. *See* Disgrace, Harmless.
- STAMMER—stutter, falter, hesitate in speaking. *See* Stagger.
- STAMP—character. *See* Mark.
- STAND—*See* Stay.
- STATE—*in life*, condition, circumstances, situation, station; political body, *or* body politic, body of men; rank, post, degree, quality, dignity, grandeur. *See* Condition, Situation, Order, Grand.
- STATUE—*See* Stand.
- STAY—remain, continue, abide; endure, last; wait, attend; rest, rely, confide in, trust; stop, restrain, withhold, delay, obstruct, hinder. *See* Abide, Dwell, Delay, Hinder.
- STEP—*See* Go, Pace, Mark.
- STICK—*See* Follower, Attachment.
- STIFF—*See* Formal.
- STILL—stop, check, restrain, calm, allay, assuage, lull, pacify, compose, appease, quiet; silence, suppress, subdue. *See* Settle, Calm, Ease, Peace, Allay, Silence.
- STINK—*See* Rotten.
- STIR—move, agitate; *up*, incite, instigate, prompt, excite, raise, animate, stimulate, provoke, rouse, begin, quicken, enliven, disturb. *See* Move, Animate, Awaken, Agitation, Anger.
- STOCK—stem, body; family, lineage; fund, capital, store, magazine, supply, accumulation, hoard, provision; *live stock*, as cattle *or* sheep. *See* Body, House, Race, Goods, Lay.
- STOP—*See* Hinder.
- STORE—*See* Stock.
- STORY—tale, narration, narrative, history, memoir, recital, relation; fiction, fable; incident, anecdote; floor, loft. *See* Memoir, History, Chronicle, Falsehood.
- STRANGE—*See* Odd, Outward.
- STRATAGEM—*See* Plan, Trick.
- STRAY—wander, deviate, err, swerve, *rove*, ramble. *See* Ramble, Wander.
- STREAM—current, course, tide; river, rivulet, brook, streamlet, rill; drift. *See* Course.
- STRENGTH—*See* Strong, Power.
- STRENGTHEN—make strong *or* stronger, fortify, invigorate, animate, encourage; enforce; establish, confirm, corroborate. *See* Encourage, Animate, Strong.
- STRICT—*See* Severe.
- STRIFE—*See* Quarrel.
- STRIKE—*See* Beat.
- STRONG—powerful, vigorous, robust, stout, sturdy, hardy, firm, solid, sinewy, muscular, able; mighty, potent, cogent, forcible, efficacious; ardent, eager, zealous; violent, vehement, earnest; bright, glaring, vivid. *See* Powerful, Firm, Solid, Able, Lusty, Bright, Zealous.
- STUDY—*See* Think, Attention.
- STRUGGLE—*See* Unwilling.
- STUPID—*See* Blockhead.
- SUBJECT—placed *or* situate under; exposed, liable, obnoxious; prone, disposed. *See* Accountable.
- SUBSIDE—sink *or* fall to the bottom, settle; abate, intermit, assuage, allay, become tranquil. *See* Calm, Ease, Quiet, Settle.
- SUCCESS—*See* Prosper, Lucky.
- SUCKLE—*See* Nourish.
- SUDDEN—without notice, abrupt, unexpected, unlooked for, unanticipated; emergent. *See* Abrupt.
- SUFFER—undergo, feel *or* bear pain, endure, support, sustain; allow, tolerate, permit. *See* Support, Allow.
- SUFFERANCE—bearing, endurance, patience, moderation; toleration, permission, suffering, allowance. *See* Bear, Suffer, Allow, Passive.
- SUITABLE—fitting, accordant, agreeable, conformable, adapted, convenient, befitting, proper, becoming, adequate. *See* Agreeable, Becoming, Fit.
- SUPERFICIAL—being on the surface; shallow, flimsy, not deep *or* profound, slight, cursory, desultory.
- SUPPORT—bear, sustain, uphold, stay, prop, second, forward, assist, countenance, favor, patronize, promote, encourage, nurture, nourish, cherish, foster; maintain, protect, shield, de-

- fend; verify, make good, substantiate, vindicate. *See* Bear, Suffer, Assist, Stay, Favor, Encourage, Nourish, Foster, Protect.
- SURE**—certain, unfailing, infallible, indubitable; safe, secure, firm. *See* Certain, Doubted, *not to be*, Firm, Security.
- SURROUND**—encompass, compass, environ, inclose on all sides; inclose, encircle, invest, besiege.
- SURVEY**—*See* Look.
- SWALLOW up**—take into the stomach; engulf, absorb, engross, engage wholly; imbibe, exhaust, consume, devour. *See* Engross.
- SWEET**—*See* Amiable.
- SWEET-SMELLING**—odoriferous, odorous, fragrant, perfumed, sweet-scented, ambrosial.
- SWELL out**—dilate, distend, expand, extend. *See* Lay, Spread.
- SWIFT**—*See* Quick.
- SWING**—*See* Stagger.
- SYSTEM**—method, order, mode, manner. *See* Manner, Order, Formality.
- TAKE**—receive, accept; *from*, deprive of, deduct, subtract; detract, derogate; *to or upon one's self*, appropriate, assume, adopt, undertake; arrogate, usurp. *See* Seize, Embrace, Catching.
- TALENT**—*See* Ability.
- TALK**—*See* Speak.
- TALK**—converse, speak, confer, discourse, commune, hold intercourse, chat, confabulate. *See* Speak.
- TALK**—converse, conversation, colloquy, dialogue, discourse, conference, confabulation, chat. *See* Speech, Hearsay.
- TALKATIVE**—speaking much, loquacious, garrulous.
- TAME**—*See* Overcome.
- TART**—*See* Sour.
- TASTE**—gustation, savor, relish, flavor, palate; judgment, genius, discernment, perception, sensibility. *See* Palate, Flat, Judgment.
- TAX**—impost, tribute, duty, contribution, custom, toll, rate, sum imposed, assessment; burden; charge, censure; task. *See* Custom, Rate.
- TEACH**—*See* Instruct.
- TEASE**—*See* Trouble, Incommode.
- TELL**—*See* Relate, Declare.
- TEMPER**—*See* Abstaining, Cool, Cross, Ill-tempered, Sourness, Qualify.
- TEMPT**—allure, entice, attract, solicit, incite, provoke, decoy, seduce, inveigle, coax, persuade, induce, draw; *in Scripture*, try, prove, put to trial for proof. *See* Allure, Induce, Lead, Try.
- TEND**—*See* Lean.
- TERRIFY**—frighten, appal, alarm, intimidate, dismay. *See* Fright, Fear.
- TEST**—criterion; standard; trial. *See* Trial.
- THICK**—dense, not thin, compact, close, solid; gross, coarse; turbid, muddy, feculent; insipidated; frequent; *make thick*, incassate; consolidate. *See* Dense, Close, Solid, Gross.
- THIN**—rare, attenuated, not dense, not close; slim, small, slender, lean, meager, slight. *See* Rare, Small, Lean.
- THING done**—fact; act, action, deed; feat, exploit, achievement. *See* Performance.
- THINK**—judge, conclude, imagine, suppose, conceive, opine, fancy, muse, ruminate, meditate, reflect, call to mind, cogitate, consider, deliberate, contemplate, ponder; believe, deem; guess, conjecture, surmise, divine. *See* Fancy, Count.
- THOUGHT**—idea, conception, imagination, perception, notion, fancy, conceit; reflection, consideration, contemplation, meditation, cogitation, deliberation, opinion, judgment, supposition; design, purpose; solicitude, care, concern. *See* Conceit, Judgment, Opinion, Care, Whim.
- THOUGHTFUL**—full of thought, contemplative, meditative, reflective, mindful, considerate, deliberate, deliberative, attentive, careful, circumspect, wary, advised, discreet. *See* Careful, Watchful, Mind.
- THROW**—*See* Cast, Send.
- THRUST**—*See* Intrude.
- TIDINGS**—*See* News.
- TIE**—*See* Gird, Band, Knot.
- TIME**—period, age, date; duration, season, era, epoch; repetition, doubling.
- TIMELY**—seasonable, opportune. *See* Untimely.
- TIRE**—*See* Weary.
- TIRED**—fatigued, wearied, harassed, exhausted. *See* Weary.
- TONGUE**—*See* Language, Speech.
- TOOL**—*See* Instrument.
- TOP**—*See* Height.
- TRACE**—*See* Mark.
- TRADE**—business, traffic, barter, dealing,

- commerce, merchandise, exchange, truckage; occupation. *See* Business, Interchange, Merchandise, Change.
- TRANSITORY—passing, fleeting, temporary, transient, evanescent, momentary, speedily vanishing, quickly passing away, fading. *See* Time, Vanish, Mortal.
- TRANSPARENT—pervious, pellucid, diaphanous, translucent, transpicuous, limpid. *See* Clear, Bright.
- TRAVEL—*See* Go.
- TREATMENT—management, manipulation; usage; entertainment. *See* Use.
- TREMBLE—*See* Shake, Fear.
- TREMBLING—tremor, trepidation, quaking, shaking with fear, shivering. *See* Fear, Shake.
- TRIAL—experiment; experience; test. *See* Test, Attempt, Proof, Try.
- TRICK—*See* Entangle.
- TRICK—artifice, chicanery, stratagem, cheat, cheating, wile, fraud, cozenage, juggle, finesse, sleight, legerdemain, deception. *See* Cheat, Cunning, Shift, Jest.
- TRIFLING—trivial, petty, frivolous, futile, unimportant, insignificant, immaterial, useless, inept, unfit, inconsiderable, light, slight, worthless. *See* Idle, Vain.
- TROUBLE—*See* Grieve, Hurt.
- TROUBLE—TROUBLES—disturbance, agitation, commotion, perplexity, distress, affliction, suffering, adversity, calamity, misfortune; molestation, inconvenience, annoyance, uneasiness, vexation; difficulties, embarrassments, perplexities, vexations, cares, anxieties, disquietudes; sorrow, misery. *See* Agitation, Misfortune, Care, Difficulty, Pain, Vexation, Darkness.
- TROUBLESOME—molesting, annoying, irksome, disquieting, disturbing, harassing, perplexing, afflictive, vexatious. *See* Wearisome.
- TRUE—*See* Sincere.
- TRUNK—*See* Body.
- TRUST—*See* Belief, Confidence.
- TRUTH—veracity; honesty, virtue, faithfulness, fidelity, constancy; fact, reality, conformity. *See* Faithfulness, Honesty, Maxim, Doctrine.
- TRY—*See* Trial, Attempt, Tempt.
- TUMBLE—roll, fall, roll down, drop, sink.
- TUMULT—commotion, disturbance, agitation, riot, broil, row, affray, uproar, confusion, bustle, stir, convulsion. *See* Insurrection, Quarrel, Trouble.
- TUMULTUOUS—disorderly, tumultuary, agitated, restless, unquiet, irregular, noisy, disturbed, confused, promiscuous, unruly, ungovernable, turbulent, violent; seditious, mutinous, rebellious, insurgent, riotous. *See* Insurrection, Rebellious, Confused, Loud, Hasty.
- TURN—*See* Change, Shift.
- TWIG—*See* Shoot.
- TWIST—contort, writhe; wreath, wind, encircle, twine, twirl, form, weave, bend, turn, wrest, wrench, swing; pervert, distort. *See* Entangle, Move round, Crooked.
- TYPE—*See* Mark, Letter.
- UMPIRE—*See* Judge.
- UNBELIEF—incredulity, infidelity, disbelief, distrust. *See* Belief.
- UNBOUNDED—boundless, infinite, unlimited, interminable, unchecked, uncontrolled, unrestrained. *See* End, without.
- UNBURY—exhume, exhumate, disinter. *See* Rise, Bury.
- UNCERTAIN, *be*—waver, fluctuate, undulate, oscillate, vacillate; doubt, hesitate. *See* Wave, Doubted, *not to be*.
- UNCOMMON—not common, not usual, rare, scarce, unique, choice, singular. *See* Rare.
- UNDERSTAND—comprehend, know, conceive, apprehend, appreciate. *See* Know.
- UNDERSTANDING—intellect, intelligence, judgment, faculty, knowledge, comprehension, apprehension, conception, perception. *See* Judgment, Knowledge, Sense.
- UNDETERMINED—not determined, unsettled, undecided, indeterminate, irresolute, unresolved, unsteady, wavering, fluctuating, doubtful, hesitating. *See* Changeable, Uncertain, *be*.
- UNEASINESS—restlessness, want of ease, disquiet, disquietude; solicitude, anxiety, care. *See* Care, Trouble.
- UNEQUAL—*See* Equal.
- UNFAITHFUL—faithless, perfidious, treacherous; undutiful, disloyal; neglectful. *See* Faithless, Neglect.
- UNFOLD—open folds, unravel, expand, spread out; develop; disclose, reveal, divulge, declare, tell. *See* Explain, Spread, Declare.

- UNHAPPY**—wretched, miserable, unfortunate, unlucky, calamitous, evil, distressed, afflicted. *See* Pitiable.
- UNIMPORTANT**—immaterial, insignificant. *See* Trifling.
- UNIVERSAL**—*See* Whole, All.
- UNJUST**—not just, inequitable, unfair, dishonest, iniquitous, knavish, roguish, wrongful. *See* Iniquity, Wicked, Honesty, Justice.
- UNLIKE**—not like, dissimilar; different, diverse; separate, distinct. *See* Separate.
- UNRELENTING**—relentless, implacable, inexorable, hard, cruel. *See* Appeased, *not to be*, Cruel, Deadly.
- UNSETTLE**—unfix, unhinge, make uncertain *or* fluctuating, disconcert. *See* Order, *put out of*.
- UNSPEAKABLE**—that can not be uttered *or* expressed, ineffable, inexpressible, unutterable. *See* Speak.
- UNTIMELY**—premature, inopportune, unseasonable, ill-timed. *See* Timely, Time.
- UNWILLING**—not willing, loth, disinclined, reluctant, backward, averse. *See* Obstinate, Averse.
- UPRIGHT**—*See* Right.
- UPRIGHTNESS**—perpendicular erection; rectitude, integrity, honesty. *See* Honesty, Justice.
- USE**—usefulness, utility, advantage, benefit, profit, avail, service, serviceableness; employment, practice, custom, usage. *See* Benefit, Profitable, Custom, Treatment, Apply.
- USURP**—*See* Assume *falsely*, Take.
- UTTER**—speak, pronounce, articulate, express; disclose, discover, divulge, publish. *See* Speak, Publish, Call out.
- UTTERED**—spoken, pronounced; disclosed, published; *by mouth or voice*, oral, verbal, vocal.
- VAIN**—empty, unreal; worthless, idle, useless, abortive, fruitless, ineffectual; conceited, proud, self-conceited, opinionative, opiniated, opinioned, self-opinioned, egotistical; showy, ostentatious; light, inconstant; unsatisfying; false, deceitful, spurious. *See* Proud, Idle, Empty, Foolish, Conceit, Showy, Spurious.
- VALE**—valley, dale, dell, dingle.
- VALOR**—*See* Courage.
- VALUE**—worth, price, rate; estimation, account, importance, efficacy, appreciation; appraisement *or* apprizement, valuation, assessment. *See* Rate, Worth.
- VALUE**—estimate, rate, apprise *or* appraise, assess, compute, calculate; prize, esteem, respect, regard, appreciate. *See* Rate, Respect.
- VALUABLE**—having value *or* worth, precious, costly, estimable, worthy. *See* Worthy.
- VANISH**—disappear, pass away from sight; flit. *See* Transitory.
- VANQUISH**—*See* Overcome.
- VAUNTING**—boasting, glorying, vainglory, ostentation, display, parade, vapor, vanity, arrogance, rodomontade. *See* Boaster.
- VEIL**—*See* Hide.
- VENGEANCE**—*See* Punish, Assert.
- VEST**—*See* Covering.
- VETERAN**—*See* Old.
- VEX**—*See* Incommode.
- VEXATION**—chagrin, mortification, teasing trouble, uneasiness. *See* Wearisome, Trouble.
- VIBRATE**—*See* Shake.
- VICE**—*See* Crime.
- VICTUALS**—*See* Food.
- VIE**—*See* Emulous.
- VIEW**—*See* Look, See, Glance.
- VIGOROUS**—*See* Active, Strong.
- VILLAGE**—*See* Countryman, House.
- VILLAIN**—vassal, servant, subject, dependant; wretch, scoundrel, rascal. *See* Follower, Blockhead.
- VIOLATION**—law-breaking, infringement, infraction, transgression, trespass; rape. *See* Sin, Injury.
- VIOLENT**—forcible, vehement, outrageous, boisterous, turbulent, fierce, furious, impetuous, passionate, assailing, *See* Cruel, Hot, Force.
- VIPER**—*See* Serpent.
- VISION**—sight; appearance, apparition, phantom, specter, ghost. *See* Ghost, Ghostly.
- VOICE**—*See* Uttered.
- VOID**—*See* Empty space.
- VOTE**—suffrage, voice.
- VOW**—*See* Pray.
- VOWEL**—*See* Letter.
- WAGES**—*See* Pay, Reward.
- WAIL**—*See* Mourn, Grieve.
- WALK**—*See* Go.

- WANDER—rove, ramble, stroll, roam, range; leave home, depart, migrate; digress, diverge, deviate, err, stray; be delirious. *See* Ramble, Go, Eccentric, Joint, *out of*.
- WANT—deficiency, defect; need, lack, necessity; poverty, penury, indigence. *See* Scarcity, Necessity, Poorness, Poor.
- WANTON—*See* Lust, Loose.
- WARM—*See* Heat.
- WARM—cordial, hearty, sincere, zealous, ardent, fervent, intense; keen, irritable. *See* Affectionate, Hearty, Zealous, Keen, Hot, Enthusiast.
- WARMTH—warmness, gentle heat, fervency, fervor, zeal, ardor, intensity, cordiality, vehemence, heat, glow; earnestness, eagerness; excitement, animation. *See* Heat, Eagerness, Life.
- WARNING—previous notice, monition, admonition, caution. *See* Caution.
- WARRANT—*See* Answerable *for*, Promise.
- WARY—cautious, circumspect, watchful, guarded, scrupulous, timorously prudent. *See* Watchful, Careful, Aware.
- WASTE—devastation, spoil, ravage, desolation, havoc, destruction; squandering, dissipation; consumption, loss, useless expense; desolate or uncultivated country; ground or space unoccupied. *See* Plunder, Loss, Destruction.
- WASTE—cause to be lost, expend uselessly, squander, dissipate, lavish, consume, spend, use; destroy, desolate; wear out, exhaust. *See* Lavish, Spend, Destroy, Desolate, Corrupt.
- WASTING—lavishing, dissipating, desolating, laying waste; decay, consumption, decline, phthisis; perishing, fading, decadence.
- WATCHFUL—vigilant, attentive, careful, heedful, observant, cautious, circumspect, wakeful. *See* Careful, Thoughtful, Wary, Aware.
- WATER—*See* Soak.
- WAVE, WAVER—*See* Pause, Uncertain, *be*.
- WAVE—billow, surge, breaker. *See* Sea.
- WAY—passing; passage, road, highway, lane, street; method, system, mode, course, means, manner, form, fashion. *See* System, Gap, Opening, Means, Course, Custom.
- WEAK—feeble, infirm, piping, weakly, enfeebled, debilitated, enervated, flaccid, limber, lax; easily broken; soft, pliant; low, small. *See* Broken, *easily*, Low, Foolish.
- WEAKEN—debilitate, enfeeble, enervate, effeminate, invalidate. *See* Droop.
- WEAKNESS—feebleness, debility, languor, infirmity, unhealthiness, imbecility, frailty, frailness; foolishness; *in the plural*, defeat, failing, fault, foible. *See* Power, *want of*, Fault, Folly.
- WEAPON—*See* Arm, Covering.
- WEARISOME—causing weariness, tiresome, tedious, prolix, fatiguing, exhausting, reducing, troublesome, annoying, vexatious. *See* Troublesome.
- WEARY—reduce, exhaust, tire, fatigue, harass, dispirit, jade, wear out, subdue; annoy, vex. *See* Worry.
- WEEP—*See* Mourn.
- WEIGH—*See* Think.
- WEIGHT—*See* Burden, Importance, Heavy.
- WELL—*See* Good.
- WET—*See* Moist, Soak.
- WHEAT—*See* Food.
- WHIM—sudden turn *or* start of the mind, freak, fancy, maggot, caprice, prank. *See* Conceit, Thought, Frolic, Lightness.
- WHITE—*See* Pale.
- WHITEN—bleach, blanch.
- WHOLE—all, total, integral; complete, entire, perfect, sound, well, undivided; full. *See* All, Wholly.
- WHOLLY—totally, completely, entirely, perfectly, fully.
- WICKED—evil, sinful, immoral, impious, profane, irreligious, depraved; unjust, iniquitous, nefarious; *in a high degree*, atrocious, heinous, flagrant, flagitious, facinorous, villainous, enormous, monstrous. *See* Abandoned, Corrupt, Unjust, Iniquity, Sin.
- WIDE—*See* Large.
- WIFE—*See* Marriage.
- WILD—*See* Cruel.
- WILL—*See* Disposition, Pleasure, Choice, Kindness, Malice.
- WILL—testament; codicil.
- WINDING—*See* Crooked.
- WIPE—*See* Clean.
- WISE—having knowledge, sage, sagacious, sapient, discerning; discreet, judicious, prudent; learned, knowing, skillful, dexterous; godly, pious. *See* Godly, Ignorant.
- WISELY—prudently, judiciously, discreetly, with wisdom, sagely, sagaciously, skillfully, cautiously, circumspectly.

WISH—*See* Hope, Choose.

WISH *for*—desire, covet, long for, hanker after, sigh for; request, entreat, solicit, beg, ask; aspire to. *See* Beg, Aim.

WITTY—*See* Odd.

WONDER—surprise, amazement, astonishment, admiration; miracle, marvel, prodigy, strange thing, monster.

WONT—*See* Custom.

WORK—employment, occupation, labor, toil, drudgery, operation; fabric, manufacture; action, deed, feat, achievement; composition, book. *See* Operation, Accomplishment, Performance, Pain.

WORRY—bore, tease, trouble, vex, harass, perplex, distract, disturb, annoy, confuse, confound; fatigue; tear, mangle; taunt, tantalize, torment. *See* Trouble, Mangle, Displease, Plague.

WORSE, *make*—deteriorate, impair; injure, damage. *See* Corrupt, Injure.

WORTH—value, excellence, perfection; merit, desert, goodness, usefulness; virtue, morality. *See* Value, Morals.

WORTHY—*See* Valuable, Praiseworthy.

WRATH—*See* Anger.

WRETCH—*See* Miser, Unhappy.

WRITER—penman, scribe, clerk, copyist, transcriber, secretary, amanuensis; lawyer; author, classic, editor.

WRITHE—*See* Twist.

WRONG—*See* Wicked, Ill.

YEAR—*See* Time.

YIELD—*See* Give up.

YIELDING—producing, affording; conceding, resigning, surrendering, allowing; flexible, accommodating; compliance, submission, deference.

YOUNG—youthful, juvenile, infantile, infantine; puerile, boyish, childish.

YOUTH—juvenility, adolescence, puerility; boyhood, childhood, infancy.

ZEAL—ardor, heat, fervency, fervor, earnestness, warmth, intensity, eagerness, avidity, enthusiasm. *See* Eagerness, Warmth, Heat.

ZEALOUS—ardent, earnest, warm, fervent, solicitous, anxious, intense. *See* Warm, Affectionate.

252



LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 003 237 921 7

